

Edu^{STAR} eBOOK

中教育星电子图书馆

中教育星

电子图书馆

EBOOK



无敌英语语法（高中版）

Edustar

中教育星软件股份有限公司

编者序

随兴逛一趟书店，总要经历一回被充斥于市的英语语法工具书“惊吓”的磨练。

以出版业所经营的选题类别看待，还真的没有一个“选题”，似这般多样、恒久、持续爆发。这一切现象，只因着一个关键性因素——人人需要，而且必要！

然而站在专业的编辑立场，“人人需要”与“必要”并不意味着：有就好，怎么制编都可以。

让“需要”变成一种期待享受、让“必要”成为唾手可得，是我们制编英语语法这个老选题时，硬加诸于己的挑战性目标。

1994年冬，我们开始酝酿并且积极构思，1996年3月一举推出了《无敌英语语法》初级版，我们无须在此吹擂曾经为这本书费了多少心思，但是从推出以后受到广大读者的热切欢迎，并几乎成为初中学生人手一册的必备读物，足以证明读者其实很清楚我们为大家做了什么。

对于全书的编辑创意、内容设计与使用功能，读者基本上没有异议；对于此间诸多同业争相仿效、企图抄袭鱼目混珠，我们无心追究。唯一成为我们与读者共同的疑问，那就是“何时出版高中版？”

千呼万唤中又过了两年，高中版也终于要问市了，照例不标榜制编的用心与特色，只想真诚向读者郑重宣示，高中版是在初级版的基础上编写的，因此初级版介绍较多而全面的部分便没有涉及，例如：代词、冠词和数词、形容词和副词、介词、连词、句子的成分和基本句型、句子的种类和疑问句。

此目的旨在减少英语语法的全面沉重感，并彻底按初、高中教学课程具体分离，既利于在学学生学习，更利于一般初学者循序自修，同时特别针对重点与难点进行图解式整理分析，对易错、易混的语法进行具象比对。真正让学习英语语法的需要，成为一种期待享受，让学习英语语法的必要，变得轻易而迅速有成。

制编本书，算是我们为冲破学习英语语法的种种困难，所辑录的攻克历程，已经有许多人认为获益良多，希望您也能！

编辑部谨识

第 1 章 现在完成时和现在完成进行时

1. 现在完成时的形式	13
2. 现在完成时的用法	15
3. 使用现在完成时需注意的事项	26
4. 现在完成进行时	28

现在完成时的基本例句：

1. I **have worked** here since 1970.

自 1970 年以来我就在这儿工作。

2. He **has been** to the Great Wall twice.

他已经去过两次长城了。

3. Mike **has just finished** his homework.

迈克刚做完他的作业。

现在完成时是描述过去发生的而与现在情况有关的事或状态（例 2，例 3），或是从过去某时到现在为止这一段时间中发生的情况（例 1），换言之，现在完成时是表现从**过去到现在的事情**。

1 现在完成时的形式

1 现在完成时的肯定句

主语 (I , we , you , 第三人称复数)	have +	过去分词
主语 (第三人称单数)	has +	

We **have been** busy this afternoon.

今天下午我们一直很忙。

She **has returned** from America.

她已从美国回来了。

I **have finished** my supper now.

此刻我已经吃过饭了。

2 现在完成时的否定句

主语+ have (has) + **not** +过去分词

The baseball game **hasn't** (has not) **started** yet.

棒球赛还没有开始。

They **haven't** (have not) **arrived**.

他们还没到达。

3 现在完成时的一般疑问句

Have (Has)+主语+过去分词?

说明

现在完成时一般疑问句的回答与其它时态的一般疑问句一样，要用 Yes 或 No。

Yes +主语+have.

(has)

No+主语+haven't.

(hasn't)

过去分词及其它成分省略。

Has the game **started**? 比赛开始了吗?

Yes, it has. 是的, 开始了。

No, it hasn't. 不, 还没开始。

Have you **watched** TV today? 你今天看电视了吗?

Yes, I have. 是的, 我看了。

No, I haven't. 不, 我没看。

4 现在完成时的特殊疑问句

现在完成时的特殊疑问句分为两种情况:

1. 疑问词作主语时

疑问词 (主语) +have(has)+过去分词~?

Who **has (have) made** these paper flowers?

谁 (可指单数, 亦可指复数) 作了这些纸花?

Tom (Tom's friends) **has (have) made** them.

汤姆 (汤姆的朋友们) 做的。

What **has made** you so happy?

什么事让你这么高兴?

My daughter's call **has made** me so happy.

我女儿的电话让我这么高兴。

2. 疑问词作主语以外的成分时

疑问词+have(has)+主语+过去分词~?

主语+have(has)的缩写形式

I have I've

You have You're

We have We've

They have They've

He has He's

She has She's

It has It's

How long **have** you **worked** here?

你在这儿工作多长时间了?

I've worked here for nearly 20 years.

我在这儿工作将近二十年了。

How many times **have** you **been** here?

你到这儿来了多少次了?

I have been here five times.

我到这儿来过五次。

2 现在完成时的用法

现在完成时的形式皆以“**have(has)+过去分词**”来表示，有“继续”、“完了”、“结果”、“经验”等用法。

形式	用法	意义
have(has)+过去分词	继续	表示从过去继续到现在动作或状态
	经验	表现过去某时刻到现在的经验
	完成	表示现在刚完成的动作
	结果	表示现在是“做了……”的结果

继续 I have studied English for three years.
我已经学习英语三年了。

She has been sick since last month.
她上个月就生病了。

经验 I have visited Beijing many times.
我访问过北京好多次了。

Have you ever been to Hawaii?
你曾经去夏威夷吗？

完成 I have just finished my homework.
我刚刚完成我的家庭作业。

Has he finished his work yet?
他作好工作了吗？

结果 My brother has become a teacher.
我哥哥已经成为一名教师了。

I have lost my watch.
我手表弄丢了。（我现在仍旧没有表）

现在完成时四种用法的时间状语	
继续	since, for, How long ~?, all 等等
经验	often, ever, never, before, once, ~ times 等等
完成	already, just, yet 等等
结果	不需要时间状语

1 表示继续的现在完成时

[肯定句] Those foreigners **have lived** in China for about ten years.

那些外国人住在中国将近十年了。

[否定句] We **haven't seen** each other all this month.
我们这个月一直没有见面。

[疑问句] How long **has he known** that man?
他认识那个多久（多长时间）了？

He **has known** that man since he came here six years ago.
自从他六年前来到这儿就认识那个人了。

1. 用法

表示继续意义的现在完成时说明过去的动作一直延续到现在。也就是说从过去某时开始的动作、状态，一直持续到现在。往往用联系现在

的表示一段时间的时间状语。说明如下：

I began to live here ten year ago.

我十年前就开始在这里居住了。

I still live here now.

我现在仍然住在这里。

I have lived here since ten years ago.

自从十年前我就住在这里了。

“live (住)”这个动作从过去某时 十年前就开始了。一直持续到现在(一直住到现在)。所以 这一句现在完成时的句子可以分解为 , 两个句子(一句是过去时,表示过去时开始的动作;一句是现在时,表示现在仍在继续)。如下表示

注意

现在完成时这一时态就是动作在过去发生,但一定要和现在有关系,否则就用过去时。如左述 只表示十年前我在这儿住过,与现在没关系。而用了现在完成时,即使不用时间状语,也表示与现在有关系,即现在仍住在这儿。

过去时	I began to live here ten years ago.
现在时	I still live here now.
现在完成时(+)	I have lived here since ten years ago.

过去某时 现在完成时(have +过去分词) 现在
必背!

表继续的动词

在英语中能用现在完成时表示延续到现在动作的动词比较少,常用的有:

have known	have studied	have worked
已经认识了.....	已经学习了.....	已经工作了.....
have been in	have used	have taught
已经.....	已经使用了.....	已经教了.....
have stayed	have wanted to	have lived
已经停留了.....	已经想要.....	已经住了.....

2. 常用的时间状语

表示继续的现在完成时,常和下列时间状语连用: for+时间; since +过去某时; how long; today; this week(month, year...); these days(months, years...); lately; recently; so far; up to now; till(until) now; in thepast(last) year(days...); during the past (last) days (years...); always; all day; all this week...; often

a. for +时间

for 后面表示时间的可以是具体的数字,也可以是泛指的时间如 a long time(一段长时间), several days(几天), some time(一些时间)。

I have known him for a long time.

我认识他已经有很长时间了。

She has been busy **for five days**.

她这五天来一直很忙。

“for + 时间”并不只是在完成时连用，别的时态也用，但意思不一样。

注意

“for+时间”可以和各种时态连用。千万不要产生误解，认为“for +时间”只用于完成时，不过它与完成时连用是非常常见的。

He **worked** in Shanghai for two months **in 1965**.

1965年时他在上海工作过两个月。

(该句是过去时，与现在无关，只是在过去的1965年发生的事)

He often **stays** in Shanghai for two months **every year**.

每年他常常在上海呆两个月。

(这句用的是一般现在时，因为它指的是一个客观情况，而且时间状语 every year 限定这句的时态为现在时。)

b. since +表示过去的时间单词或句子

“**since + 表示过去时间的词**”，表示从过去某时开始的动作或状态一直继续到现在，此时 **since 是介词**。常见的的时间状语如下：

since three days ago.

自从三天前以来

(如果只是 three days ago, 就只表示过去的时间，即三天前和现在没关系)

since then 从那时以来

since 1990 从1990年以来到现在

有时只用 since 而省了后面的时间而表示从过去某时以来一直到现在。

Lili has been sick **since** yesterday (last night.)

莉莉从昨天(昨夜)以来就病了。

“**since + 句子(过去时)**”，此过去时的句子相当于 since+表示过去的时间，只不过用过去时的动词表示过去的动作或状态。此时 **since 是连词**。

注意

通常 since 引导的从句的动词是用过去时，而主句原则上是用现在完成时，但用“**It is +时间...**”开始的句子例外。

It is ten years since we left school.

自从我们离开学校已经有十年了。

We have known each other **since** we were children.

自从我们是孩子时(我们童年时)就彼此认识了。

My father has taught English here **since** he moved here in 1980.

从我父亲1980年搬到这儿来后(直到现在)他一直在教英语。

c. how long... 表示多长时间，多久

回答 **How long + have (has)+主语+过去分词...**? 这样的现在完成时的问句时，常用 for...和 since 的句子。但和 for +时间一样，how long 也不仅仅用于完成时，它可以用于其它时态。

How long have you studied Chinese?

你学汉语多长时间了？

I've studied it for 3 years.

我学习汉语三年了。

I've studied it since I came to China.

自从我来到中国，我就开始学汉语了。

How long did you study Chinese last year?

去年你学了多长时间的汉语？

注意

“When...?” 疑问句不可以用现在完成时，因为“When...?” 疑问名是用来询问时间的，而现在完成式则不谈动作的时间。

When have you visited Beijing?(×)

When did you visit Beijing?()

你是什么时候拜访过北京的？

说明

总之，凡表示一段时间的副词，而且这一段时间到现在还没有终止者，皆可以和现在完成时连用。

d. all +时间

all day(一整天), all this morning(今天一整个早上), all week(一整个星期)等时间状语除了和完成时连用外，亦可和其它时态连用。

My sister has had a toothache all day.

我妹妹的牙疼了一整天。

Before liberation the farmers worked all day, but they got little.

解放前，农民们整日干活，可是几乎得不到什么。

e. 其它：always, often, these days (months...), recently (lately), so far, up to now, till (until) now, in the last few years
always (总是), often (常常), these days (months...) (这几天；这几个月)可以和完成时连用，也可以和别的时态连用。

recently, lately (最近，近来)表示包括现在在内的时间，所以常常和现在完成时连用。

so far = up to now (到目前为止), till (until) now (到现在)两者皆和现在密切相关，所以往往用现在完成时。

in the last (past) few years (在过去的几年中)这样的时间状语，一般用于现在完成时(也可用于过去时，但中学阶段可不掌握)

We've always (often) seen him walk after supper.

我们经常看到他晚饭后散步。

He hasn't received letters recently (lately).

他最近(近来)没收到信。

Three students have been killed so far.

截至到目前，已有三个学生死亡。

We have learned about 2,000 words in the past few years.

在过去的几年中我们已掌握了大约2,000个单词。

(在这里“在过去的几年中”的实际意思是从过去几年到现在为止，

包含现在，所以要用现在完成时。)

2 表示经验的现在完成时

[肯定句] He **has read** the novel three times.

这本小说他已经读了(看了)三遍了。

[否定句] I **'ve never been** there.

我从来没去过那儿。

[疑问句] **Have** you ever **been** to U.K.?

你去过英国吗?

1. 用法

表示经验意义的现在完成时，说明从过去起到现在的经验，即从过去到现在之间曾经经历过或做过的事情。说明如下：

过去时：I saw the film three years ago and I saw the film again and again.

(可能是三年前或者别的时间，总之是过去的某一时间，我曾经看过这部电影，后来又看了几遍。)

现在时：Now I know the film (or Now I remember the film).

(这部电影我现在还有印象，还记得。)

现在完成时：I **have seen** the film three times.

(这部电影我看过三次。)

注意

用了现在完成时，它就表示动作是**过去**做的，但此事(此物)我**现在**还有印象，还记得住。所以表示经验的现在完成时时，有时还可以不用时间状语。

Oh, you are talking about that film. It's wonderful. I **'ve seen** it.

哦！你们在谈论那部电影。它太精彩了，我看过。

表示过去经历过的事情、做过的事情。过去看过三次这部电影，这三次动作都是过去做过的事情，但用现在完成时，表示和现在有关系，暗指：现在我还记得它，或者这部电影对我印象很深……，所以这个句子包含 、 二句的意思。

如果只用过去时，那么就表示和现在没关系，只表示“过去看过这部电影”这个客观事实。

2. 常用于表示经验的时间状语

表示经验的现在完成时，常和下列时间状语连用：often; ever (迄今，到此为止)；never (一次也没有，从未)；before (以前)；once (一次)，twice(二次)，~ times(……次)，many times(许多次)……

a. 置于句中的时间状语(副词)：often, ever, never

ever 用于疑问句中，never 用于否定句中。

这些在句中的副词的位置是固定的，要放在助动词 have(has) 的后面，过去分词的前面，如下：

主语+ have (has) +副词+过去分词~ .

We have **often** heard about that country.

我们常常听到有关那个国家的消息。

Have you **ever** seen a UFO?

你迄今（到目前为止）见到过飞碟吗？

答句中如果表示从没见过，口气坚决，还可用 never 回答。

No, I never have.

No, I've never seen one.

两句都可以，注意 never 的位置。

No, I haven't. 不，没有。

Yes, I have. 是的，见过。

The boy has never finished reading the whole book since I taught him.

自从我教这个小男孩以来，他从来没读完过一本书。

（never 用于否定句中语气强烈。）

b. 放在句末的时间状语：表频率的副词，before, yet
必背！

表频率的副词

一次 once

两次 twice

三次 three times

四次 four times

数次 several times

许多次 many times

She has read the poem once.

她曾经朗诵过一遍这首诗。

I remember I have seen you somewhere before.

我记得我以前曾经在什么地方见过你。

c. How often; How many times...

How often (How many times)+ have(has)+主语+过去分词...?

用于询问频率、次数的场合。

How often have you seen the old man?

你见过几次那位老人？

Only once(twice).

只见过一次（两次）。

How many times have you been to the province?

那个省，你去过几次（多少次）？

Many times.

许多次。

3. have(has) been...

由 have(has)与 be 动词的过去分词组成的“have(has) been...”表达的意思比较复杂，要注意上下文及句子情景，正确使用它。其用法以表说明如下：

形式	意义	用法
have(has) been to	表示“曾经去过……”	经验
	表示“到……去过了”	完成
have(has) been in	表示“曾在……”	经验
	表示“一直在……”	继续

a. have been to

have (has) been to 用于“经验”，表“曾去过……”时，常和 often, once, twice 等频率副词连用。

I have often been to Japan.

我常去日本。

I have been to Japan twice. (经验)

我曾去过两次日本。

I have been to the airport to see my father off. (完成)

我到机场去送我父亲了。

b. have been in

Have you ever been in America? (经验)

你在曾在美国住过吗？

No, I have not been there yet.

没有，我还没在那儿住过呢。

We have been in the museum for the whole morning. (继续)

我们一上午一直在博物馆。

注意

在 have(has) been in (to) ... 的句子中 in(to) 后面跟的是名词，如果是副词 here, there 则不用 to, in。

We have been there for the whole morning. Have you been there?

我们一上午一直在那里。你在那儿吗？

be 动词的过去分词

be 动词的过去分词不管主语的人称和数，都用 been 表示。

We have been happy these days.

这些日子我们很高兴。

注意以下三个句子的区别：

I am busy. 我很忙。 一般现在时

I was busy. 我过去很忙。 一般过去时

I have been busy. 我一直很忙。 现在完成时

3 表示完成、结果的现在完成时

He has just come back. 他刚刚回来。

I have closed the door. 我把门关上了。

Mr. Li has gone to Australia. 李先生去澳大利亚了。

表示完成、结果意义的现在完成时是表示过去发生并结束的动作对现在产生的结果和影响。这种情况可分为下面两种情况：

1. 表示“完成”的用法

“完成”的意思为“刚做完……”或“做完了……”。表示过去开始的动作，现在刚刚结束，即说话之前刚刚结束。

I've just **stopped** reading.

比较

I stopped reading yesterday.

昨天我没读书。

(只是指昨天, 和现在无关, 现在也许又在读书。)

我刚刚停止读书。

(读书这个动作已经停止, 现在我没在读书。)

They **have gone** to Guilin.

他们去了桂林。

(表示“去”这个动作已经完成, 所以现在他们不在本地。至于他们到没到桂林, 此句不表示, 他们也许已经到了桂林, 也许还在去桂林的路上, 不过总之, 现在不在此地。)

2. 表示“结果”的用法

“结果”的意思为“做了……(现在是其结果) ”。表示过去动作的结果对现在仍有影响。所以表示结果的现在完成时包含了两个意思, 以图表说明如下:

比较

I opened the window.

那只是说明以前(某时) 我打开过窗户, 也许是很早以前(几年前) 发生的事, 与现在无关, 现在这窗户也许是关着的, 也许是开着的。

I opened the window.

[过去的动作]

我打开了窗户。

The window is open now.

[过去的动作对现在的影响还存在]

现在窗户是开着的。

+ =

I **have opened** the window.

我已经打开了窗户。

Mr. Wang bought a new bike. Now he has a new

[过去某时买的]

王先生买了一辆新自行车。

bike.

现在他拥有一辆新自行车。

+ =

Mr. Wang **has bought** a new bike.

王先生买了一辆新自行车。

表示结果的现在完成时, 往往不必用时间状语。中国学生在掌握这点时常出错, 要特别注意, 一定要注意现在完成时和现在有关, 所以上述两个例句中的 即对现在的影响很重要。

必背!

表结果的现在完成时的常见动词

动词	意义	例句	表“结果”的意思
make	使……	TV has made our lives rich.	电视使我们的生活变丰富。
become	变成……	He has become a doctor.	他成为了一位医生了。
go	去	She has gone to Beijing.	她已经去了北京了。
come	来	They have come here.	他们已经来了。
lose	遗失	I have lost my watch.	我的手表丢了。
grow	成长	The tree has grown very tall.	这棵树已经长得非常高了。
sell	卖	Father has sold them.	父亲已经卖掉他们了。
buy	买	I have bought the book.	我已经买了那本书了。
fall	落下	The boy has fallen .	那男孩掉下来了。

3. 用于表示“完成”的(副词)时间状语

a. 置于句中的副词: already (已经), just (刚刚)

I have **already** written a letter to my teacher.

我已经给我的老师写了一封信了。

I have **just** finished my homework.

我刚刚写完作业。

注意

already 一般在肯定句中用,但有时也用于疑问句。

Has she arrived at the station **already**?

怎么,她已经到了火车站了吗?

(暗示惊讶的心情,可能她动身很慢,没想到,出乎意料的感觉)

b. 放在句末的副词: yet

already 和 yet 的用法	
肯定	already (已经)
否定	yet (还)
疑问	yet (已经)

He hasn't left here **yet**.

他还没离开这儿。

(在否定句中,yet 译为“还”。)

Has she had a new job **yet**?

她已经找到了新的工作了吗?

(在疑问句中 yet 可译为“已经”)

No, she hasn't.

不,没有。

No, not yet. **not yet** 常常用来代替否定句。

不,还没有。

Have you borrowed the book?

你借到了那本书了吗?

No, **not yet**.

不,还没有。

(以上我们讲了表示现在完成时的几种情况,但在实际运用中不可能,也没必要区分这么细,只供同学们理解用。)

3 使用现在完成时需注意的事项

在《无敌英语语法》初级版一书中对于下列事项：

现在完成时与一般过去时的区别；

点动词和延续动词的使用的区别；

have(has) been to 与 have(has) gone to 的区别；

过去完成时与现在完成时的区别；

都有详细的说明了，在这里就不再一一详释，这里我们仅对其它一些易混淆和需要解释的语法现象加以解释。

1 just now 和 just 的区别

两者皆可译成“方才，刚刚”，但 just now 一般用于过去时，而 just 用于现在完成时，而且它们在句中的位置也不同（参见下面例句。）

We **had** an important meeting **just now**.

我们刚刚开了一个重要的会议。

We **have just had** an important meeting.

我们刚刚开了一个重要的会议。

2 today, this morning, this afternoon...

运用这些时间状语时，时态要根据说话时的具体情况而定。

He **didn't** call me this afternoon.

根据时态是过去时，我们可以推测说话时已经是晚上了。所以此句译为：

他今天下午没给我打过电话。

He **hasn't called** me this afternoon.

根据时态是现在完成时，可以推测，说话时还是下午，所以此句译为：

他今天下午还没给我打电话呢。

（下午说的话，他还有可能给我打电话。）

He **arrived** here a little late today, because he got up late and **didn't** catch the bus.

今天他晚了一会儿到，因为他晚起，没赶上公车。

（到达 arrive 这个动作已经过去了。）

He **has been** ill today.

今天他病了。

（截止到说话时，仍是在今天，他仍病着。）

3 注意地点状语的运用

有时一个地点状语会影响时态的运用，因为这个地点状语实际上就限定了时间。

I **saw** the movie **at the Hong Lou Cinema**.

我在红楼电影院看这部电影的。

（“在红楼电影院”这个地点状语就限定了看电影这个动作发生在过去的某时，而我们就不能把看电影这个动作和现在联系起来。所以这个句子虽然没有时间状语，但这个地点状语决定了这个句子需要用过去时。）

比较

I **have seen** the movie. 我看过这部电影。

这句话就包含两个意思“ I saw the movie at the Hon Lou Cinema. 或者 I saw the movie last week. (表示过去的动作)。”和“ Now I know the movie. (和现在的情况联系起来)。”

I joined the army **in Beijing**.

比较

I **have joined** the army.

我已经参军了。

包含“ I joined the army some time ago (or in Beijing). Now I'm a PLA man.”两个意思。

我是在北京参军的。

(因用了地点状语 in Beijing, 所以句子只能是过去时, 不能用现在完成时。)

4 几种时态表同一意思

我们已经学了几种时态, 有时可用几种时态表示同一意思。例如: “他离开中国已经三年了。”可用下列时态表示:

一般过去时:

He **left** China **three years ago**.

他三年前离开中国的。

一般现在时:

It is (has been) three years since he left China.

注意

实际上这是一个常用的句型

It is +时间+ since +句子(过去时)

(最好用 It is 而不用 It has been)

现在完成时:

He **has been** away from China for three years.

(注意不要用 left, 因为 leave 是点动词, 区别详见初级版 P.144。)

4 现在完成进行时

现在完成进行时和现在完成时一样, 表示从过去某时开始到现在这一段时间里一直延续着的动作。

现在完成时侧重于动作的结束或完成; 而现在完成时则侧重于动作的未结束和继续进行。

现在完成时 I **have opened** the door.

我打了门。

(完成了这一单一动作。)

现在完成进行时 I **have been reading** aloud the poem since then.

从那时起我一直在朗读这首诗。

(动作从过去一直持续到现在还在继续。)

1 现在完成进行时的形式

肯定句 主语+have (has) been +现在分词(doing)... .

[比较]现在完成时的被动语态

主语+have (has) been +过去分词(done)... .

疑问句 Have(Has)+主语+been +现在分词(doing)... ?

Have you been writing all the day?

你一整天都在写吗?

How long has it been raining?

雨下了多久了?

It has been raining for three days.

雨下了三天了。

He hasn't been sleeping for 5 hours.

他没有一直睡了五个小时。——而是四个、三个或六七个小时。

(这句话中否定词在形式上似乎是否定谓语 hasn't been sleeping,但实际上却否定了状语 for 5 hours.)

注意

现在完成时有否定结构,而现在完成进行时基本上没有否定结构。

2 现在完成进行时的用法

1. 在强调指出动作还未结束,还要继续下去时

不能用现在完成时,而要用现在完成进行时,以避免使人误认为动作已经全部完成。

I've been writing the composition for two hours, but I haven't finished it yet.

这篇作文我写了两个小时了,但还没写完。

(强调动作没有结束,还要继续写下去。)

I've written the composition. I'm not satisfied with it. You can read it and tell me what you think of it.

我已经写完了这篇作文了。我不太满意,你可以看看,然后告诉我(你觉得它怎么样。)你的想法。

(强调动作已结束。)

2. 强调动作延续时间的长久或带感情色彩时

有些动词如 live, learn, play, rain, snow, stand, study, teach, work, wait...用于现在完成时并不表示动作已完成,所以他们既可用于现在完成时,也可用于现在完成进行时,但如果强调动作延续时间的长久或带有感情色彩时,用现在完成进行时更好一些。

We have been living here for nearly 20 years.

我们在这儿住了近二十年了。(强调住的时间长)

Miss Li has always been studying hard.

李小姐学习总是非常努力。(赞许的感情色彩)

3. 动作不包含持续意思的动词要用现在完成进行时,表示延续到现在的动作。

注意

现在完成时可表已做完的事情及已有的经验,但现在完成进行时则无此两种作用。

I have told him about the news.....()

I have been telling him about the news.....(×)

我告诉过它这消息了。

My mother **has washed** the dishes.

我妈妈洗完了碟子。

(动作完成了,她现在不再洗碟子了。)

My mother **has been washing** the dishes.

我妈妈一直在洗碟子。(动作没结束,她还在洗。)

4.现在完成进行时有时也用来表示一种在现在以前这个阶段反复发生的事。

He **has been promising** me to help you. Hasn't he done it?

他一直答应我要帮助你,难道他没这样做吗?

I **have** always **been thinking** of him, but I can't see him.

虽然我一直在想着他,但是我不能见他。

5.有些动词不能用于现在完成进行时,但可用于现在完成时。

表示动态的动词(一部分)如 be, have, exist 等动词。

表示感情的动词如 like, love 等动词。

表示感觉的动词如 see, hear, know 等动词。

() He **has had** a cold for a week.

(×) He has been having a cold for a week.

他病了一周了。

() I **have known** Mr. Li since I was ten.

(×) I have been knowing Mr. Li since I was ten.

从我十岁起我就认识李先生了。

3 用于现在完成进行时的时间状语

用于现在完成进行时的时间状语基本上和表示继续的现在完成时的时间状语相同:

for +时间; since; these; years; recently; all the time (day, week...); How long...

They have been talking **for six hours**.

六个小时了,他们一直在谈着。

How long has it been snowing?

雪一直下了多长时间了?

Practice 实力测验

一. 用适当时态填空

1. When I arrived, the supper ____ (already begin).

2. They ____ (not catch) the thief yet.

3. By the time he came, I ____ (complete) the work.

4. I ____ (not see) him lately.

5. I ____ (listen) to the radio since this morning.

6. I ____ (lose) the pen which I ____ (buy) the day before.

7. By next Sunday she ____ (stay) with us for three weeks.

8. I felt much better after I ____ (take) the medicine.

9. He'll go out when he ____ (do)with this book.
10. I'm tired of rain. It ____ (rain)since last Sunday.

二. 汉译英

1. 你听过 8 00 的广播了吗？
2. 你最近常听广播吗？
3. 这位教师已经九十多岁了。他毕生致力于教育事业。
4. 自从解放以来，中国发生了巨大的变化。
5. 李明的胳膊受了伤，已经卧床休息几个月了。
6. 他在那儿住了多久了？什么时候去那儿的？
7. —“我好久没看见莉丽了，她在干什么呢？”
—“我听说，她在写一本小说，准备年底完成。”
8. 小心！工人们已经在粉刷墙了。
9. 墙已经粉刷好了。房间比原来亮多了。

三. 选择填空 (历届考题)

1. ----Do you sill play basket ball?
----Oh, no, I ____ it for the past two years. (85)
A. haven't played
B. have played
C. didn't play
D. played
2. ----Do you know our town at all?
----No, this is the first time I ____ here. (92)
A. was
B. have been
C. came
D. am coming
3. The house is dirty. We ____ it for weeks. (92)
A. didn't clean
B. hadn't cleaned
C. don't clean
D. haven't cleaned
4. My dictionary ____ . I have looked for it everywhere but still ____ it. (93)
A. has lost; don't find
B. is missing; don't find
C. has lost; haven't found
D. is missing; haven't found
5. ----I'm sorry to keep you waitting.
----Oh, not at all. I ____ here only a few minutes. (94)
A. have been
B. had been
C. was
D. will be
6. You don't need to describe her. I ____ her several times. (95)

- A . had met
- B . have met
- C . met
- D . meet

7.----____the sports meet might be put off.

----Yes, it all depends on the weather.(95)

- A . I've been told
- B . I've told
- C . I'm told
- D . I told

其它时态

8. ----Did you see Xiao Li at the party?

----No,____ by the time I arrived.(85)

- A . she'd left
- B . she's left
- C . she was left
- D . she must leave

9. They have been in the library since ____.(85)

- A . a long time
- B . it had been open
- C . eight o'clock
- D . two hours

10. I still don't know what____ while I was away from home. (86)

- A . had happened
- B . was happened
- C . has happened
- D . happened

11. He____ his leg when he____ in a football match against another school.(87)

- A . broke; played
- B . was breaking; was play
- C . broke; was playing
- D . was breaking; played

12. My family and I____ our Christmas Eve dinner when the news of the outbreak of the war____ over on the radio.(87)

- A . enjoyed; came
- B . were enjoying; was coming
- C . enjoyed; was coming
- D . were enjoying; come

13. By the time the new pupil ____enough courage to raise his hand, the bell for the end of the lesson ____.(87)

- A . had gathered; was already ringing
- B . was gathering; had already rung
- C . gathered; already rang

- D . would gather; would already have rung
14. All the furniture in the house ____ to the landlord.(88)
- A . is belonged
B . belongs
C . belong
D . are belonged
15. Hello! I ____ you ____ in London, How long have you been here?(88)
- A . don't know; were
B . hadn't known; are
C . haven't known; are
D . didn't know; were
16. ----You've agreed to go, so why aren't you getting ready?
----But I ____ that you ____ us to start at once.(88)
- A . don't realize; want
B . don't realize; wanted
C . haven't realized; want
D . didn't realize; wanted
17. Jack and Jane ____ each other since they were children, so nobody was surprised to hear they were married.(88)
- A . had known
B . have known
C . were known
D . knew
18. Tom was disappointed that most of the guests ____ when he ____ at the party.(89)
- A . left; had arrived
B . left; arrived
C . had left; had arrived
D . had left; arrived
19. ---Come on in, Peter, I want to show you something.
---Oh, how nice of you! I ____ you ____ to bring me a gift.(90)
- A . never think; are going
B . never thought; were going
C . didn't think; are going
D . hadn't thought; were going
20. When I was at college I ____ three foreign languages, but I ____ all except a few words of each.(90)
- A . spoke; had forgotten
B . spoke; have forgotten
C . had spoken; had forgotten
D . had spoken; have forgotten
21. ----Was Tom there when you arrived?
----Yes, but he ____ soon afterwards.(92)

- A . had left
 - B . left
 - C . will leave
 - D . leaves
22. ----We could have walked to the station; it was so near.
----Yes, A taxi_____ at all necessary.(92)
- A . wasn't
 - B . hasn't been
 - C . wouldn't be
 - D . won't be
23. Tom_____ into the house when no one _____.(92)
- A . slipped; was looking
 - B . had slipped; looked
 - C . slipped; had looked
 - D . was slipping; looked
24. She_____ morning exercises when I passed by her house.(92)
- A . did
 - B . does
 - C . doing
 - D . was doing
25. ----Were you late for the film?
----Very. Half of it_____ by the time we _____the cinema.(92)
- A . was shown; reached
 - B . had been shown; reached
 - C . was shown; had reached
 - D . had been shown; had reached
26. The students_____ busily when Miss Brown went to get a book she_____in the office.(91)
- A . had written; left
 - B . were writing; has left
 - C . had written; had left
 - D . were writing; had left
27. ----How long_____ each other before they_____ married?
----For about a year.(93)
- A . have they known; get
 - B . did they know; were going to get
 - C . do they know; are going to get
 - D . had they known; got
28. I don't really work here; I_____ until the new secretary arrives.(94)
- A . just help out
 - B . have just helped out
 - C . am just helping out
 - D . will just help out

- 29.----Do you like the material?
 ----Yes, it____ very soft.(94)
 A . is feeling
 B . felt
 C . feels
 D . is felt
- 30.----Your phone number again? I____ quite catch it.
 ----It's 9568442.(95)
 A . didn't
 B . couldn't
 C . don't
 D . can't
31. I don't think Jim saw me; he____ into space.(95)
 A . just stared
 B . was just staring
 C . has just stared
 D . had just stared
32. As she ____the newspaper, Granny____ asleep.(95)
 A . read; was falling
 B . was reading; fell
 C . was reading; was falling
 D . read; fell
- 33.----What was the party like?
 ----Wonderful. It's years____ I enjoyed myself so much.(93)
 A . after
 B . before
 C . when
 D . since

解答

— .

- 1.had already begun
- 2.haven't caught
3. had completed
4. haven't seen
5. have been listening
6. have lost; bought
7. will have stayed
8. had taken
9. does/has done
10. has been raining

— .

1. Did you listen to the 8 00 broadcast?
2. Have you often listened to the radio recently?
3. The teacher is in his nineties. He has devoted himself to

education.

4. Great changes have taken place in China since liberation.

5. Li Ming is jured his arm. He has stayed in bed for several months.

6. How long has he lived there? When did he move there?

7. ----I haven't seen Lili for a long time. What has she been doing lately?

----I hear she has been writing a novel. She is going to finish it before the end of this yeas.

8. Be careful. The workers have been whitewashing the wall.

9. The walls have been whitewashed and the room is much brighten than(it was)before.

≡ .

1.A

2.B

3.D

4.D

5.A

6.B

7.A

8.A

9.C

10.D

11.C

12.D

13.A

14.B

15.D

16.D

17.A

18.D

19.B

20.B

21.B

22.A

23.A

24.D

25.B

26.D

27.D

28.C

29.C

30.A

31.B

32.B

33.D

第 2 章 被动语态

第 2 章 被动语态

1. 被动语态的构成 39

2. 被动语态的几种类型 47

3. 使用被动语态的时机 53

4. 被动语态和系表结构的区别 54

5. 学习被动语态应注意事项 58

语态是表示主语和谓语的关系的。如果主语是动作的执行者，动词要用主动语态，反之如果主语是动作的承受者，动词就要使用被动语态。

例：

主动句 The slaves **built** the Great Wall long long time ago.

主语 谓语 宾语 状语

在这个句子中主语 slaves 是动作 built 的执行者，是奴隶们修建了长城，所以用主动语态。

被动句 The Great Wall **was built** (by the slaves) long long time ago.

主语 谓语 by+执行者 状语

在这个句子中主语 the Great Wall 是动作 built 的承受者，长城被修建，所以用被动语态。

1 被动语态的构成

被动语态的句子是由助动词 **be + 过去分词** 这一形式构成的，过去分词永远不变，所有的变化即 **人称、数、时态的变化，都体现在助动词 be 的变化上**。如果助动词 be 的变化掌握得好，被动语态就很容易掌握。

1 主动语态转换为被动语态

主动句： The naughty boy **broke** a glass yesterday.

定语 主语 谓语 宾语 状语

被动句： A glass **was broken** by the naughty boy yesterday.

主语 谓语 定语 状语

(新) 主语 (由原句宾语变成) be + 过去分词，原主语变为介词 by 的宾语

译：〔主动句〕昨天这个淘气的小男孩打破了一个玻璃杯。

〔被动句〕昨天一个玻璃杯被这个淘气的小男孩打破了。

如果想熟练地掌握被动语态，必须首先对主动句的结构了解，对句子的成分清楚。变换时，请遵循下列步骤：

步骤 1 把原主动句中的宾语转换为被动语态的主语。

步骤 2 把动词改为被动形式即“be + 过去分词”，这一步很容易出错，要特别注意，这时的动词的人称和数要随着新的主语（原来主动句

中的宾语)而变,同时 be 动词的时态要按照原来主动语态的时态而不变, be 动词后面的过去分词就是原来主动语态句子中的动词的过去分词。(在被动语态的句子中必定要有一个 be 动词,不管它是什么形式的。)

步骤 3 原来主动语态句子中的主语,如果需要,就放在 by 后面以它的宾格形式出现(因为 by 是介词,后面需跟宾格作介词的宾语。)以指明做事的人或物,如果没有必要,可以省略。

步骤 4 其它的成分(定语、状语)不变。

上述例句的变换步骤:

原主动句中的宾语 a glass 变为主语。

谓语动词 break 的被动形式: be +过去分词

因为新的主语 a glass 是单数,第三人称原句是过去时,所以谓语动词为 was broken。

原句中的主语 the(naughty)boy 放在介词 by(被)后面。

其它的成分不变:naughty 作定语还是放在 boy 前面修饰它。时间状语 yesterday 不变。

2 被动语态的十种时态

被动语态句式					
主语	+	be 的各种形式			过去分词
		一般时态	进行时态	完成时态	
I, We You, He, She, It, They 及名词 (如 book ... 等)	+	现在	am are is	am are is } being	have has } been
		过去	was were	was were } being	had been
		将来	shall be will be	×	shal will } have been
		过去将来	should be would be	×	should would } have been
					+ given, built, praised, sent

1. 一般现在时

主动句: The students clean the classroom every day.

主 谓 宾 状

学生们每天打扫教室。

被动句:

(肯定句) The classroom is cleaned(by the students) every day.

主 谓 状

(否定句) The classroom isn't cleaned every day.

(疑问句) Is the classroom cleaned every day?

Yes, it is.

No, it isn't.

说明

一般时被动句的 be 动词变化:

应按被动句中新主语的人称和数而变化。

其时态应与主动句的动词时态一致。

2. 一般过去时

主动句： The workers made the recorder I bought yesterday last month.
主 谓 宾 定 状

我昨天买的那台录音机是上个月生产的。

被动句：

〔肯定句〕 The recorder I bought yesterday was made last month.
主 定 谓 状

我昨天买的那台录音机是上个月生产的。

(比较一下主动句和被动句，似被动句更好一些)

〔否定句〕 The recorder I bought yesterday **wasn't made** last month.

〔疑问句〕 **Was** the recorder I bought yesterday **made** last month?

Yes, it was.

No, it wasn't,

3. 一般将来时

主动句： Our government will send him to Tibet soon.
主 谓 宾 状

我们政府将很快把他派往西藏。

被动句：

〔肯定句〕 He **will be sent** to Tibet (by our government) **soon.**
主 谓 状 状

〔否定句〕 He **will not (won't) be sent** to Tibet soon.

〔疑问句〕 **Will** he **be sent** to Tibet soon?

Yes, he will.

No, he won't.

说明

进行时被动语态除了谓语部分外，与一般时被动语态的变换原则相同。

在 be 动词之后加 being，再加过去分词（亦即将主动语态中的现在分词改为过去分词）。

be 动词的变化要配合新主语的人称、数及时态。

4. 现在进行时

主动句： The girls are singing the song now.
主 谓 宾 状

女孩子们正在唱这首歌。

被动句：

〔肯定句〕 The song is being sung (by the girls) now.
主 谓 状

这首歌现在正在被唱着。

〔否定句〕 The song **isn't being sung** now.

〔疑问句〕 **Is** the song **being sung** now?

Yes, it is.

No, is isn't.

5. 过去进行时

主动句： The girls were singing the song when I got there.

主 谓 宾 状

当我到那时，女孩子们正在唱这首歌。

被动句：

〔肯定句〕 The song was being sung (by the girls) when I got there.

主 谓 状

〔否定句〕 The song **wasn't being sung** when I got there.

〔疑问句〕 **Was** the song **being sung** when I got there?

Yes, it was./No, it wasn't.

6. 现在完成时

主动句： The doctor has saved more than thirty lives.

主 谓 宾

这位大夫已经拯救了三十多条生命了。

被动句：

〔肯定句〕 More than thirty lives have been saved (by the doctor).

主 谓

三十多条生命被拯救了。

〔否定句〕 More than thirty lives **haven't been saved.**

〔疑问句〕 **Have** more than thirty lives **been saved?**

Yes, they have./No, they haven't.

说明

完成时被动语态与一般时的一般原则大致相同，只有谓语部分不同。

谓语是由“have(has, had)+been +过去分词（即原本主动句中的过去分词）”所构成。

have, has, had 之采用则视被动句中新主语的人称、数和时态而定。

7. 过去完成时

主动句： They had built forty factories by 1980.

主 谓 宾 状

截至1980年，他们已经建成了40个工厂。

被动句：

〔肯定句〕 Forty factories had been built (by them) by 1980.

主 谓 状

截至1980年，40所工厂已经建立起来了。

〔否定句〕 Forty factories **hadn't been built** by 1980.

〔疑问句〕 **Had** forty factories **been built** by 1980?

Yes, they had./ No, they hadn't.

注意

by them 和 by 1980 意义不同，by 1980 是时间状语，不可以省略。

8. 过去将来时

主动句：

┌────────── 宾语从句 ─────────┐

The teacher said he would publish the results soon.

主 谓主 谓 宾 状

老师说他会很快就会公布结果。

被动句：

(肯定句) The teacher said the results would be published soon (by him).

主 谓 状

老师说，结果将很快被公布。

(否定句) The teacher said the results wouldn't be published soon.

9. 将来完成时 ()

主动句： We shall(will) have learned two thousand words by the end of this term.

主 谓 宾 状

截至这学期末，我们将学二千个单词。

被动句：

(肯定句) Two thousand words will have been learned (by us) by the end of this term.

主 谓 状

(否定句) Two thousand words won't have been learned by the end of this term.

(疑问句) Will two thousand words have been learned by the end of this term?

Yes, they will.

No, they won't.

10. 过去将来完成时 ()

主动句：

┌────────── 宾语从句 ─────────┐

He said he would have learned many words by 1999.

主 谓 宾 状

他说到 1999 年时他将学许多单词。

被动句： He said many words would have been learned (by him) by 1999.

主 谓 状

他说到 1999 年时，许多单词将要学会。

说明

被动语态的将来完成时和过去将来完成时很少用。

11. 没有被动结构的时态 ()

被动语态没有完成进行时态，一般也没有将来进行时态，如果有用这种时态的主动结构要变为被动结构，(由主动语态变为被动语态)可以用完成时态或一般时态。

注意

由于be, being和been这三个字中的任何两个字都不可以用在一起, 因此将来进行时 (shall/will be being) 和各种完成进行时 (have, has/had/shall, will have been being) 这样的被动语态几乎是不可以用的。

a. 完成进行时的被动结构:

完成进行时变为被动语态时, 要用完成时。

主动句: Our teacher has been teaching this lesson for three weeks.
主 谓 宾 状

〔现在完成进行时〕

我们老师一直在教这一课已有三周了。

被动句: This lesson has been taught for three weeks.
主 谓 状

〔现在完成时〕

这一课一直教了三周了。

b. 将来进行时的被动结构:

将来进行时变为被动语态时, 要用一般将来时。

主动句: You will be doing the experiment here at this time next Monday. (将来进行时)

下周一的这个时候, 你正在这儿做实验。

被动句: The experiment will be done here at this time next Monday. (一般将来时)

这个实验下周一的这个时候在这儿做。

主动句: We will have been using this book for full three years by next June. (将来完成进行时)

到明年六月, 我们已用了这本书整整三年了。

被动句: The book will have been used full three years by next June. (将来完成时)

到明年六月, 这本书就整整被用了三年了。

主动语态与被动语态的时态比较

语态/时态	主动语态	被动语态
现在	现在时动词	am are is } + 过去分词
过去	过去时动词	was were } + 过去分词
将来	shall will } + 动词原形	shall will } be + 过去分词
现在进行	am are is } + 现在分词	am are is } being + 过去分词
过去进行	was were } + 现在分词	was were } being + 过去分词
现在完成	have has } + 过去分词	have has } been + 过去分词
过去完成	had + 过去分词	had been + 过去分词
将来完成	shall will } have + 过去分词	shall will } have been + 过去分词
过去将来	should would } + 动词原形	should would } be + 过去分词
过去将来完成	should would } have + 过去分词	should would } have been + 过去分词
(11)将来进行	shall will } be + 现在分词	×
(12)各种完成进行	has/ have had shall/ will } have been + 现在分词	×

注:将来进行时转被动语态结构时,以一般将来时表示。各种完成进行时转被动语态结构时,以一般完成时表示。

2 被动语态的几种类型

由于主动语态结构的不同,因而转成被动语态的方式亦各有不同,兹分类说明如下:

1 由及物动词形成的被动语态

1. 有一个宾语的句子(SVO)的被动语态

主动句: S+V+O

被动句: S+ be +过去分词+ by +O (原主语之宾格形式)

He **wrote** this letter yesterday.

S V O

他昨天写了这封信。

This letter **was written** by him yesterday.

S V

Thousands of tourists **will visit** Beijing this year.

S (主) V (谓) O (宾)

今天将会有成千上万的观光客造访北京。

Beijing **will be visited** by thousands of tourists this year.

2. 有两个宾语的句子 (SV00) 的被动语态

主动句: S+V+IO (间接宾语)+DO (直接宾语)

被动句: S+ (原 IO) +be +过去分词+原 DO +by +原主语之宾格

S (原 DO) +be +过去分词+原 IO+ by +原主语之宾格

主动语态里有两个宾语 (间接宾语和直接宾语) 时; 可用其中的任何一个宾语做被动语态的主语, 剩下的一个宾语保留在过去分词之后, 称为保留宾语。

用直接宾语 (DO) 做被动语态的主语时, 保留在过去分词后面的保留宾语之前可加一个适当的介词, 如 to, for, of 等, 以加强间接宾语 (IO) 的语气。(此种被动形式较常用)

Lei Ning **showed** the guard **his** passport.

主 谓 间接宾语 直接宾语

列宁把通行证给卫兵看了。

The guard **was shown** the passport (by Lei Ning).

(间接宾语作主语)

卫兵看了通行证。

The passport **was shown** (to) the guard (by Lei Ning).

(直接宾语作主语)

(若有加上 to 表示强调给卫兵看, 不是给别人看)

通行证给卫兵看了。

I **have asked** him the question.

主 谓 间接宾语 直接宾语

我已经问了他这个问题了。

He **has been asked** the question (by me).

(间接宾语作主语)

他被问了这个问题。

The question **has been asked** (of) him (by me).

(直接宾语作主语)

向他提出了这个问题。

(加上 of, 表示强调向他提出, 不是向别人。)

在“S+V+IO+DO”的句型中, 其被动语态, 在习惯上区分为下列三种:

a. 可有两种被动语态的动词如:

award, buy, give, leave, lend, offer, pay, show, teach, tell

He gave me a bike.

他给了我一辆自行车。

A bike was given to me (by him).

一辆自行车被给我。

I was given a bike(by him).

我被给了一辆自行车。

b. 通常用直接宾语作被动语态的主语的一些动词

bring, do, make, pass, sell, send, sing, write...

He wrote her a letter.

他写给她一封信。

A letter was written(to)her by him. (合习惯)

She was written a letter. (不合习惯)

My sister made me a doll.

我姊姊给我做了个洋娃娃。

A doll was made(for)me by my sister. (合习惯)

I was made a doll by my sister. (不合习惯)

c. 通常用间接宾语做被动语态的主语的一些动词

answer, deny, envy, refuse, save, spare

He answered me the question.

他回答我问题。

I was answered the question by him. (合习惯)

The question was answered me by him. (不合习惯)

The authorities refused James a passport.

当局拒发给杰姆斯护照。

James was refused a passport by the authorities. (合习惯)

A passport was refused James by the authorities. (不合习惯)

必背！

常使用双宾语的动词 tell, show, buy, ask, pass, write, do, make, sell, send, sing, give, answer, teach, offer, pay, promise, allow, award...

3. 含有宾语补足语的句子 (SVOC) 的被动语态

主动句: S+V+O+C (宾语补足语)

被动句: S+ be +过去分词+C+ by +O (原主语之宾格形式)

有宾语补足语的主动语态改为被动语态时, 补足语放在过去分词之后, 其位置虽然维持不变, 但语法功能变了——此时的补足语不再是宾语补足语, 而变成了主语补足语。

We call him Great Man.

主 谓 宾 宾补

我们叫他“伟人”。

He is called Great Man(by us).

他被我们称为“伟人”。

They will make the city more beautiful.

主 谓 宾 宾补

他们将会让城市更美丽。

The city will be made more beautiful(by them).

主 谓 主补

城市将会被弄得更美丽。

We **saw** the **flags** raising.

主 谓 宾 宾补

我们看见旗子升上去。

The **flags** **was seen** raising.

主 谓 主补

旗子被看见升上去。

He **saw** a **thief** steal something from the room.

主 谓 宾 宾补

我们看见一个小偷从屋子里偷了东西。

A **thief** **was seen to** steal something from the room.

主 谓 主补

一个小偷被看见从屋子里偷了东西。

注意

所有带不定式宾语补足语的动词，在变为被动语态时，不定式前都有 to 特别是感官动词(see, watch, look at, observe, listen to, hear, feel) 和使役动词(make, have) 在主动语态的句子中，宾语补足语前省略了 to，在变为被动语态时，主语补足语前一律加 to。(含有 let 的句子在变为被动语态时，to 可以省略)。

2 由“不及物动词+介词或副词”形成的被动语态

一般情况下，只有及物动词才能跟宾语，而不及物动词不能跟宾语，所以只有及物动词有被动语态，不及物动词没有被动语态。但有些不及物动词后面跟上介词或副词后，形成一个短语，这个短语相当于一个及物动词，那它就可以形成被动语态。

1. 由短语动词形成的被动语态

主动句：S+V(不及物动词)+介词+O

被动句：S+ be +过去分词+介词+ by + O+(原主语之宾格形式)

在短语动词结构中动词和介词的关系非常密切，已经形成一个固定词组，介词的位置是固定的，不能随意变动的。

The doctor **is operating** on a patient.

医生正在给一个病人动手术。

A patient **is being operated** on (by the doctor).

一个病人正在手术之中。

She **dreamt** of a beautiful world.

她梦到一个美丽的世界。

A beautiful world **was dreamt** of (by her).

一个美丽的世界被她所梦见。

由<动词+介词>形成的动词短语

operate on 给某人动手术

cut down 砍倒

take care of 关心；照顾

dream of 梦到

fire at 向.....开火
call on 号召
arrive at (in)到达.....
hear of 听说
improve upon 改进
get to 到达
insist on 坚持
turn on 打开
look at 看.....
listen to 听.....
put off 推迟
look after 照看；照顾
laugh at 嘲笑
run over 辗过
look down upon 看不起.....
pay attention to 注意
agree on 就某事达成协议
send for 请
depend on 依靠.....
talk about 谈论.....

2. 由非短语动词形成的被动语态

在这样的结构中，介词或副词的位置不固定，（不仅仅只跟在动词后面），位置较灵活。

The student **danced** around the visitors.

学生们围着客人们跳舞。

The visitors **were danced** around (by the students).

客人们被学生们围着跳舞。

A round (by the students)the visitors **were danced**.

(around 的位置较灵活)

注意

will 用于第一称是表说话者的意志，因此改为被动语态时，其主语 you, he 第二、三人称，须用 shall，以表说话者“我”的意志。

I will punish him.

我要惩罚他。

He shall be punished by me.

3 由情态动词形成的被动语态

主动句：S+情态动词+**动词**+O

被动句：S+情态动词+**be + 过去分词**+by + O（原主语之宾格形式）

含有情态动词的句子变为被动语态时，在情态动词后加上 be。

You **should do** it at once.

你应该马上做这件事。

It **should be done** at once(by you).

这件事应该马上去办。

She **ought to hand in** her homework.

她应该交作业。

Her homework **ought to be handed in**.

她的作业应该交。

They **needn't look after** her tomorrow.

他们明天不必照看她。

She **needn't be looked after** tomorrow (by them).

她明天不必被照看。

Dare you **say** that words?

你敢说那样的话吗？

Dare that word **be said** (by you)?

那样的话敢说出来吗？

说明

情态动词

can, may, must, dare, should, ought to, need, ...

句型 “be going to + 动词” 的被动语态

be going to 是一个情态动词，如：can, may...等，所以它的句型和情态动词一样。

She **is going to see** a film this night.

今天晚上她打算看一场电影。

A film **is going to be seen** this night (by her).

Are you going to wash all these dishes?

你准备洗这些盘子吗？

Are all these dishes going to be washed (by you)?

4 祈使句的被动语态

祈使句的被动语态使用 Let 句式

肯定祈使句：

a. 主动句：V (原形) + 0

被动句：Let + 0 (原宾语) + be (原形) + 过去分词

Read English every day!

天天读英语。

Let English be read every day!

(原宾语)

否定祈使句：

b. 主动句：Don't + V (原形) + 0

被动句：Don't let + 0 (原宾语) + be + 过去分词

Don't tell the story to him.

别给他讲这个故事。

Don't let the story be told to him.

(原宾语)

3 使用被动语态的时机

1 动作执行者不明显，不重要或不愿说出时

不知道谁是动作的执行者，或由于某些原因没有必要指出谁是动作的执行者时。

1. 汉语中的无主语句子

有些汉语句子，根据英语语法分析，没有主语，这种句子在英语中往往用被动语态。

Teachers are needed everywhere in China.

在中国到处都需要教师。

Spitting is not allowed.

禁止吐痰。

Such key school **can be seen** in many places in the cities.

在城市中许多地方都可以看到这样的重点学校。

类似这样的无主语句子还有一些已形成的一些固定句式。

It's said there will be an exam soon.

据说很快就要考试了。

It **is known** that Taiwan belongs to China.

众所周知台湾是中国的。

无主语的固定句式

It must be pointed out that...必须指出 It is thought that...
大家认为

It is reported...据报导 It is taken for granted that...被视为当然

It is believed that...大家相信 It's said...据说

It has been decided that...大家决定 It is known that...众所周知

2. 在汉语中，当主语泛指某些人时，往往也用被动语态。

When he **was asked** to have a rest, he always smiled and said,
“Thank you, but I'm not tired.”

当人们请他休息时，他总是笑笑说：“我不累，谢谢。”

2 需要突出或强调动作的承受者时

体现在汉语句子里常常出现“被；为……所；受……”等表示被动的词语。

The delegation **was warmly welcomed**.

代表团受到了热烈的欢迎。

Many valuable things **were stolen**.

许多贵重的物品被偷。

Under the Party's leadership all the difficulties **can be overcome**.

在党的领导下，所有的困难都能被克服。

4 被动语态和系表结构的区别

因为被动语态和系表结构在构成上是相同的，都是由 be + 过去分词而构成，所以在应用时应注意它们的区别。

系表结构：表示主语的特点或所处的状态。

被动语态：表示以主语为承受者的动作。

注意并非所有的动词的过去分词都可以用作表语，表示主语所处的状态或特点的，只有那些形容词特征显著的过去分词才能作表语。

具有形容词特征的过去分词

be covered 覆盖 be excited be completed 完成的
be closed, be shut 关着的 兴奋的，激动的 be finished 完成的
be painted 油漆着的 be delighted 高兴的 be surprised 惊讶的

be amused 觉得有趣 be frightened 害怕的 be tired 累的
be broken 破了 be married 结婚了的 be worried 担心的
be burnt 烧过了 be interested 有兴趣的 be wounded 受伤的

be crowded 拥挤的 be pleased 高兴的 be injured 受伤的
be drunk 醉的 be satisfied 满意的 be killed 死的
be dressed 穿着 be known 被知道的 be confused 弄糊涂了...

我们还可以通过以下几点来判断句子是被动语态，还是系表结构。

1 根据状语来区别

1. 有时间状语和方式状语的，一般为被动语态反之为系表结构。

比较

The library **is closed**(shut).

图书馆关门了。

(表状态，系表结构)

The library **is closed** at six.

图书馆六点钟关门。

(表被动语态，表动作，因为有时间状态)

比较

The report **is well written**.

那篇报告写得好。

(表特点，系表结构)

The report **was written** with great care.

那篇报告是非常用心地写出来的。

(有方式状语 with great care，有表示 written 这一动作是被动语态。)

2. 在句中有 by+人和 by+抽象名词时，句子多用被动语态，而 by+物时，多用于系表结构。

The enemy **were surrounded** by the P.L.A. men.

敌人很快被解放军包围了。

(有 by+人, 所以是被动语态)

He **was surprised** by **noise**.

吵闹声使他很惊讶。

(有 by+ 抽象名词, 所以是被动语态)

The house **is surrounded** by **trees**.

房子周围都是树。

(有 by+ 物, 所以是系表结构)

说明

有相应的形容词能说明状态时, 不用分词而用形容词表示。比较典型的是 open 和 closed。

() The door **is open**. 门是开着的。

(×) The door **is opened**.

(open 可当形容词和动词)

() The door **is closed**. 门是关着的。

(×) The door **is close**.

(close 作形容词时只能当“亲密的”讲, 没有“关着”的意思, 所以只能用过去分词 closed 表示。)

2 根据所用的时态来区别

1. 如果是被动语态的句子, 它的时态一般要与它的相应的主动语态的句子一致(即主动、被动语态互换时, 保持原来的时态不变)。如果句子是系表结构的, 就不必考虑时态一致。

The glass **is broken**. [系表结构]

这块玻璃是破的。

(系表结构, 一般现在时)

The glass **was broken** by Li Ming. [被动语态]

这块玻璃是李明打破的。

(强调动作, 用过去时)

Li Ming **broke** this glass. [主动语态]

2. 同时可注意的是一般情况下, 系表结构只能用于一般现在时、一般过去时、现在完成时和过去完成时, 不能用于其它时态。而被动语态除了不用于完成进行时和将来进行时外, 可用于其它任何时态。

A new building **is being built** in the district.

我们区正在盖一座大楼。

(本句时态为现在进行时, 所以不可能是系表结构, 是被动语态。)

He'll be surprised when he meets me.

当他再见到我时会吃惊的。

(此句时态为一般将来时, 所以它是被动语态。)

3 根据动词的种类来区别

1. be + 不及物动词的过去分词

正如前文所提到的不及物动词没有被动语态, 除非它后面跟上介词或副词。所以 be + 不及物动词的过去分词, 一般不是被动语态, 而是系表结构。这类动词分类说明如下:

a . 表示状态的动词

be gone 消失了

be returned 回来了

be fallen 落下

be risen 升起了

be retired 退休了

Difficult time is gone.

困难时期过去了。

b . 表示智力活动结果的动词

be learned 有学问的 ; 有知识的

be educated 受过教育

be mistaken 弄错 ; 误会

be known 著名.....

He is well educated.

他受过良好的教育。

c . 表示心态的动词

be ashamed 觉得惭愧

be interested 有兴趣

be astonished 觉得惊讶

be excited 兴奋

be pleased 高兴

Why are you so excited?

你为什么这样兴奋 ?

2 . be + 延续动词的过去分词 (只表被动语态)

be admired 受到崇拜

be loved 被人爱戴

be respected 受到尊敬

be encouraged 受到鼓励、鼓舞

be praised 受到表扬

Napoleon was admired by his soldiers.

拿破仑被 (为) 他的士兵所崇拜。

例外

有时这些表心态的动词也可接 by 来表达被动意义。

Every one **was excited by** the news of the victory.

每个人都被胜利的消息鼓舞起来。

5 学习被动语态应注意事项

1 主动语态不能变为被动语态的情况

1 . 当宾语是反身代词时或相互代词时

The girl found herself in the valley.

小女孩不知不觉地来到山谷中。

They help each other.

他们互相帮助。

2 . 当谓语是表示状态的及物动词时

The salary can last him only a week.

这工资只能维持他一周的生活。

Does the pair of boots suit you?

这双靴子适合你吗 ?

3 . 当宾语是不定式或动名词时

We all want to be teachers.

我们都想当老师。

They enjoy having dinner outside.

他们愿意到外面吃饭。

4. 感官动词表示状态或结果时

这类动词有：

smile 微笑

smell 闻起来

sound 听起来

taste 尝起来

look 看起来

seem 似乎

remain 仍然

prove 证明

appear 显得

fall 掉落

turn 变成

The new comer smiled his thanks.

新来的人微笑表示感谢。

Your idea sounds good.

你的主意听起来不错。

The leaves have turned yellow.

叶子变黄了。

The music sounds like Pock Roll.

这音乐听起来像摇滚乐。

5. 当宾语起状语作用，表示数量、重量、大小、程度时。

这类动词有：

cost 价值

weigh 重

number 计

keep 保持

wash 洗

drink 喝

sell 卖

The coat costs forty yuan.

这件上衣价格是四十元。

The book sells well.

这本书的销路好。

The bottle of wine drinks delicious.

这瓶葡萄酒喝起来味道很美。

6. 主语+have/get +宾语+过去分词

这个句型也不能变为被动语态，因为它本身具有被动含义。

() I had my tooth pulled yesterday.

(×) I had my tooth to be pulled yesterday.

我昨天拔了一颗牙（一颗牙被拔）。

（暗指被别人拔的）

必背！

不可分割的动词短语不能变为被动语态，如下：

keep word

履行诺言

lose one's heart

灰心

make a face

做鬼脸

还有一些固定的词组和句式用主动句表示被动的含义，当然也就不能把它们变为被动语态的句子了。（详见下文）

2 用主动语态表示被动的含义

1. 固定的句型

a. be worth doing sth.

The film is well worth seeing twice.

这个电影很值得看两遍。

b. have/get sth / sb +过去分词

have 作使役动词，无被动态，但可以用 have + 宾语+过去分词表“被动经验”和“使役”。

请注意 have 与 get 的区别：get 是出自本身的意愿，have 是出于无奈和自愿

() I **had** my watch **stolen**.

(×) I **got** my watch **stolen**.

我的手表被偷了。

(出于无奈，只可用 had)

() I **had** my watch **repaired**.

(×) I **got** my watch **repaired**.

我拿手表去修理。

(出于自愿，had, got 皆可)

c. 主语+want/need/require/doing(=to be done)

注意

此句型的主语大多为物。

The composition needs(wants, requires)rewriting.(=to be rewritten.)

这篇作文需要重写。

The baby wants (needs, requires)examining.

这个婴儿需要体检。

(主语是人，这是一个例外)

2. to be +under(in)+抽象名词(表达被动含义)

The car is under(in) repair.

=The car is being repaired now.

那辆车正在修理(被修理)。

This kind of machine is in use.

=This kind of machine is being used.

这种类型的机器正在使用中(被使用)。

3. 有些动词可用主动语态的形式来表达被动的含义

常见的可以这样用的动词有 clean, sell, lock, translate, read, write, wash, wear, cook, tear, cut, keep, burn, strike, pull, act, last, feel (摸起来) 等。

The books sell well.

这些书很好卖。

The door doesn't lock.

这门锁不上。

The cloth washes easily.

这种布好洗。

Potatoes cook slowly.

马铃薯煮起来很慢。

含有这类动词的句子也可以写成被动语态的句子，但含义不同，主动语态的句子表示现状，被动语态的句子则侧重于某一动作的发生。

This report doesn't translate well.

这篇文章译不好。(这篇文章不容易翻译)

(暗含这篇文章本身不好翻译)

This report was not translated well. 比较

这篇文章译得不好。

注意

此时句子的主语一般是物，而且这些动词常和表示行为方式的状语连用如 well, easily, 或与否定词连用构成否定句。(侧重于动作 translate 译得不好，而不管文章本身。)

比较

The pen writes smoothly.

这笔写起来(用起来)滑溜。(写笔)

She writes smoothly.

她写起来很流利。(写人用笔)

4. 一些不定式

a. There be 句型

There are a lot of things to do.

有许多事情要去做。

b. 不定式修饰 want, have, 等动词的宾语，而句子的主语是不定式的逻辑主语时

() I have (want) some words to say.

(×) I have (want) some words to be said.

我有许多话要说。

c. easy, hard, difficult 等性质形容词+不定式时

() The maths problem is difficult to work out.

(×) The maths problem is hard to be worked out.

这道数学题很难算出来。

d. 当不定式修饰 buy, get, give 等动词的直接宾语，而间接宾语是不定式的逻辑主语时。

() His sister gave him a bike to ride.

(×) His sister gave him a bike to be ridden.

他姐姐给了他一辆自行车。7

5. 少数动词的进行时，有时有被动的含义 ()

His works are printing.

他的著作正在印刷中。

Our new school house are building.

我们的新校舍正在建筑中。

The drum is beating.

鼓正敲击着。

注意

并非所有的及物动词都可用于被动语态，有些是不可以的。

这样的词语有：meet (遇见)，become (适合)，suit, fit (适合)，last (持久)，catch (赶上)，hold (容纳)，lack (缺少)。

还有一些词组：break one's word (失信)，kill time (消磨时光)，take place (举行；发生)

() The room can hold about sixty people.

(×) About sixty people can be held by the room.

这房间可以容纳约 60 个人。

Practice 实力测验

一. 把下列句子变成被动语态或变为主动语态

1. My brother opens the windows every morning.
2. She didn't clean the room this morning.
3. Do they speak English in America?
4. The actor was loved by the young people.
5. The clothes aren't washed by her.
6. What was found by them?
7. Bob gave her an interesting book. (两种)
8. He bought his children some pencils.
9. Everyone calls me Xiao Wang.
10. Mary is making a doll.
11. She cannot compose such fine music.
12. My mother was cutting down the tree.
13. He hasn't received the letter.
14. Somebody was cleaning the room when I arrived.
15. We believe him to be a great scholar.
16. We often heard him sing.
17. My father made me go there alone.
18. Everybody will know the truth soon.

二. 用适当介词填空

1. His name is known _____ everybody in this school.
2. The ground was covered _____ leaves.
3. The box was filled _____ apples.
4. Are you interested _____ music?
5. We were surprised _____ the news.
6. She was born _____ America.
7. This desk is made _____ wood.
8. Butter is made _____ milk.
9. I'm satisfied _____ what I did.
10. Is she married _____ the old man?

三. 选择填空 (高考题)

1. ---Why does Ling Ling look so unhappy?
---She has _____ by her classmate. (85)
A. laughed
B. laughed at
C. been laughed
D. been laughed at
2. I promise that the matter will _____. (87)
A. be taken care
B. be taken care of
C. take care
D. take care of

3. I ____ ten minutes to decide whether I should reject the offer. (89)

- A. gave
- B. was given
- C. was giving
- D. had given

4. Have you moved into the new house?

Not yet. The room _____. (91)

- A. are being painted
- B. are painting
- C. are painted
- D. are being painting

5. You'd ____ if the car went over the cliff. (92)

- A. killed
- B. have killed
- C. be killed
- D. been killed

6. If city noises ____ from increasing, people ____ shout to be heard even at the dinner table 20 years from now. (92)

- A. are not kept; will have to
- B. are not kept; have to
- C. do not kept; will have to
- D. do not keep; have to

7. Little Jim should Love ____ to the theatre this evening. (92)

- A. to be taken
- B. to take
- C. being taken
- D. taking

8. I need one more stamp before my collection _____. (94)

- A. has completed
- B. complete
- C. has been completed
- D. is completed

9. I don't know the restaurant, but it's ____ to be quite a good one. (94)

- A. said
- B. told
- C. spoken
- D. talked

解答

— .

1. The windows are opened by my brother every morning.
2. The room wasn't cleaned by her this morning.
3. Is English spoken (by them) in America?
4. The young people loved the actor.
5. She doesn't wash the clothes.
6. What did they find?

7. She was given an interesting book by Bob.
An interesting book was given to her by Bob.
8. Some pencils were bought for his children by him.
9. I am called Xian Wang by everyone.
10. A doll is being made by Mary.
11. Such fine music can't be composed by her.
12. The tree was being cut down by my brother.
13. The letter hasn't been received by him.
14. The room was being cleaned when I arrived.
15. He is believed to be a great scholar.
16. He was often heard to sing.
17. I was made to go there alone by my father.
18. The truth will be known by everybody soon.

二 .

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1 . to | 2 . with | 3 . with | 4 . in |
| 5 . at | 6 . in | 7 . of | 8 . from |
| 9 . with | 10 . to | | |

三 .

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1 . D | 2 . B | 3 . B | 4 . A |
| 5 . C | 6 . A | 7 . A | 8 . D |
| 9 . A | | | |

第三章 动词不定式

第 3 章	动词不定式
1. 不定式作名词的用法	68
2. 不定式作形容词的用法	73
3. 不定式作副词的用法	78
4. 不定式作宾语补足语	83
5. 不定式中省去 to 的情况	85
6. 不定式的否定·连接代(副)词+不定式	93
7. 不定式的时态	95
8. 不定式的语态	97

定义

动词不定式与动名词、分词一样是动词的一种非谓语形式。它与动词原形同形，但它前面一般要带有一个不定式的符号“to”，我们为了把它与介词的 to 区别开来，也叫它小品词，它只是一个符号，没有词性，但动词不定式有时也不带 to。

形式

不定式的形式有六种：(以动词 give 为例)

时态 \ 语态	主动语态	被动语态
一般式	to+动词原形 (to give)	to be+过去分词 (to be give)
完成式	to have+过去分词 (to have given)	to have been+过去分词 (to have been given)
进行式	to be+现在分词 (to be giving)	无
完成进行式	to have been+现在分词 (to have been giving)	无

另外请注意不定式与现在式和原形的区别(以 be, have, go 为例)：

原形	现在式	不定式
be	am, are, is	to be
have	have, has	to have
go	go, goes	to go

用法

动词不定式是非谓语动词中使用最广泛的一种，在句子中，它除了不能作谓语外，可以担当其它任何成分：主语、宾语、表语、状语、定语和宾语补足语。在句子中起名词、形容词和副词的作用。

动词不定式的各种用法，详细分节说明如下：

1 不定式作名词的用法

不定式在句子中的作用有时和名词相同，在句子中可以当主语、表语、宾语。

He likes to play Ping-pong ball. 作宾语

不定式+宾语

他喜欢打乒乓球。

For him to draw such a picture is not easy. 作主语

不定式+宾语

对于他来说画这样的一张画是不容易的。

His job is to clean all the windows. 作表语

不定式+宾语

他的工作就是擦所有的这些窗户。

The guard ordered me to show him my passport immediately.

不定式+间接宾语+直接宾语+修饰语

作宾语补足语

守卫命令我立刻向他出示通行证。

说明：动词不定式还保留了许多动词的特点：

特点一 它可以有自己的宾语：

例 中的 Ping-Pong ball 作不定式 to play 的宾语。

例 中的 such a picture 作不定式 to draw 的宾语。

例 中的 all the windows 作不定式 to clean 的宾语。

特点二 可以有状语来修饰。

例 中的 immediately 修饰不定式 to show。

特点三 可以带有自己的主语：为了和句子中真正的主语分开，我们称它为不定式的逻辑上的主语。

例 中的 for him 是不定式 to draw 的逻辑上的主语，就是说是谁画呢？是“他”，这个“他”就是“画”的逻辑上的主语，但不是句子的真正主语，要用宾语，而句子中的真正主语是整个的不定式短语。

这个句子可以不要 for him，形成

To draw such a picture is not easy.

画这样的一张画是不容易的。

(与原例 意思有别，它是对于所有人来说。)

1 不定式作主语

To see is to believe.

百闻不如一见(眼见为实)。

To obey the laws is important.

遵守法律是非常重要的。

To finish so much homework in a day is impossible.

在一天之内完成这么多家庭作业是不可能的。

当作主语的不定式短语(即不定式带有自己的宾语、状语或逻辑上的主语)较长时，常用 it 作形式主语而将真正的主语(不定式短语)放在谓语之后。例如：

例 可变为 It is important to obey the laws

例 可变为 It is impossible to finish so much homework in a day

常见的带形式主语 it 的句型有：

句 型 一 : It is easy

(difficult, hard, important, right, wrong, possible, impossible, nece

ssary, unnecessary, foolish, wise, kind, cruel, nice...) to do...

句型二：It is a pleasure (pity, pleasant thing, crime, an honour...) to do sth

句型三：It takes (sb.) some time to do sth. 花了某人一些时间去做某事

在句型一中我们常用 for sb. 或 of sb. 来作不定式的逻辑上的主语。但是什么情况下用 for 或 of，主要从以下两方面来进行区别：

1. 两者所使用的形容词不同

a. for sb. 的句型通常使用表示客观情况的形容词。

如 easy, difficult, hard, important, possible, impossible, necessary, unnecessary, interesting 等。

It is important for us to express our opinions.

对于我们来说表达我们的意见是很重要的。

注意

当不定式作主语的句子中又再有一个不定式作表语时，不能用 It is...to... 的句型。

To see is to believe.

百闻不如一见。

It is to believe to see..... (×)

b. of sb. 的句型一般用表示主观感情或态度的形容词。

如：good, kind, nice, wise, clever, foolish, right, wrong, careful, careless, polite, impolite.

It is clever of him to leave that country.

对于他来说离开那个国家是聪明的举动。

注意

不定式作主语时谓语动词用单数。

2. of sb. 句型一般都可以换成一个不定式作状语的句子，而 for sb. 句型则不可以。

It is impolite of him to say so.

他这样说不礼貌的。

He is impolite to say so. ()

(因为 of sb. 句型中的形容词 impolite 在逻辑上可以视为 him 的表语，所以可以改为此句)

It is important for him to say so.

对于他来讲，这么说是非常重要的。

He is important to say so. (×)

(因为 for sb. 句型中的形容词 important 在逻辑上不可能是 him 的表语，所以此句子不成立。)

2 不定式作表语

My wish is to be a doctor.

我的愿望是做一名医生。

Not to grasp firmly is not to grasp at all.

抓而不紧等于不抓。

What I want to do seems to tell you something.

我想要做的似乎就是要告诉你一些事情。

1. 常见的动词

不定式作表语，一般紧跟在系动词如 be, seem, remain, appear, get 等后面，用来说明主语的内容。（见上例）

2. 常见的主语

当我们用 one's dream, business, wish, idea, plan, job, work, task, duty 及 what one wants to do 等作主语时，常用不定式作表语。（见上例）

比较

主语（事物）+be+不定式（作表语）表示主语的具体内容。

主语（人）+be+不定式（作表语）表示时态（将来时），为“即将”之意。

He is to clean the room.

他即将去打扫房间。

His plan is to clean the room.

他的计划是打扫房间。不定式和动名词作表语的区别详见 P. 105.

3 不定式作宾语

I want to do it myself.

我想我一个人做它。

We found it difficult to work with him. (形式宾语)

我们发现和他一起共事很困难。

Our teacher promised to see the movie with us.

我们老师答应和我们一起看电影。

He has no choice but to wait.

他除了等待之外，没有（别的）其它的选择。

He can do nothing but to wait.

他除了等待之外，什么也不能做。

、 、 句的不定式是做动词的宾语， 和 句的不定式是做介词 but 的宾语。

1. 动词宾语

不定式用在及物动词后担当宾语，常见的及物动词有：want, hope, wish, like, begin(start), try, need, forget, agree, know, (learn), promise, teach, refuse, help, arrange, dare, decide, determine, fail, manage, offer, prepare, pretend, hate, prefer, continue, ask, mean, choose, expect...

注意

在动词 tell, advise, show, teach, find out, decide, discuss, learn 后常跟一个带连接代词或副词的不定式作宾语。

He taught us how to use the tool.

他教我们如何使用这个工具。

When I heard the words I didn't know whether to laugh or to cry.

听了这些话后，我不知道是哭还是笑。（啼笑皆非）

a. 形式宾语

如果宾语有自己的表语时，我们常常先用“it”作形式宾语代表它，而把用作宾语的不定式放到后面，如下：

句型：主语+及物动词+it+宾语补足语+to+V
(形式宾语) (真正宾语)

必背！

带有形式宾语的常见动词 consider, believe, feel, make, find, know, regard 等。

(×) We think **to obey** the laws is important.

() We think it important **to obey** the laws.

我们认为遵守法律是十分重要的。

I know it impossible **to finish** so much homework in a day.

我知道在一天中完成这么多的作业是不可能的。

I don't think it possible **to master** a foreign language without much memory work.

我认为不花费大量时间去记忆，要掌握一门外语是不可能的。

b. 不定式的省略

为了避免重复，作宾语的不定式第二次出现时往往省略，只保留不定式符号 to：

下列动词后 want, wish, hope, like, hate, plan, try, love.

You can try it again if you want **to**.

如果你想试的话，可以再试一次。

Have you listened to the music?

你听了那音乐了吗？

No, but I plan **to**.

没听，但我打算听。

下列助动词后 have to (必须), ought(to), need.

I didn't want to bother you, but I had **to** as I forgot the address.

我本不想打扰您，但我忘了地址了，只好麻烦您了。

在 be able to, used to 和 be going to 后

Mr. Li planned to come but he wasn't able **to**.

李先生计划来的，但没来成。

Shanghai is not the city as it used **to**.

上海再也不是以前那样的城市了。

2. 介词宾语

不定式除了可以当及物动词的宾语外，还可以作 but, except, besides 等介词的宾语。

a. 当介词 but, except, besides 前面有一个实义动词 do 时，介词后面的不定式可以省去 to。

What do you like **to do besides play balls**?

除了玩球外，你还喜欢做什么？

There was nothing for the students **to do except read** the books aloud.

学生们除了朗读之外，没什么可做的。

b. 另外，介词 *instead of* 前后两个成分必须对等，如果前面一个成分是一个不定式，后面的不定式就可以省去 *to*。

We want **to watch** TV **instead of do** our homework.

我们想看电视而不想做作业。

c. 除 *but, except, besides* 外，个别介词可用“**连接代词（副词）+不定式**”作宾语。

The boy has his own idea **of how to finish** it.

这个男孩对怎样完成这项工作有他自己的想法。

动名词和不定式作宾语区别详见 P. 112

2 不定式作形容词的用法

不定式有时起形容词作用修饰名词或代词，在句子中担任定语。

不定式作定语时它的**位置是在它所修饰词的后面**，而且往往放在其它后置定语的后面，而不能放在所修饰的词的前面，这一点应引起注意。

1 动宾关系和主谓关系

He always has a lot of **meetings to attend**.

名词：*to attend* 的逻辑上宾语 定语

他总是有许多会要参加。

不定式作定语时，它所修饰的名词或代词和不定式形成动宾关系或主谓关系。例如上述句子不定式 *to attend* 作名词 *meeting* 的定语，*attend* 是及物动词，那么 *meeting* 是 *to attend* 的逻辑上的宾语，就是说你可以想像这句话为 *to attend meetings*（出席会议），不定式和它所修饰的名词形成动宾关系。

1. 名词或代词+不定式（*to* +不及物动词+介词）

如果作定语用的不定式是不及物动词，就要在这个不及物动词后面加上介词，使被修饰的这个词成为这个介词的逻辑宾语。

He is looking for a **room to live in**.
不及物动词+介词

他正在找一个住的房间。

不定式 *live* 是不及物动词需要加上一个适当的介词 *in*，使被修饰的名词 *room* 成为介词 *in* 的逻辑宾语（介词宾语）即 *to live in a room*（ ）而不能说 *live a room...*（×）

2. 名词或代词（地点，工具等）+不定式（*to*+动作性动词）+介词

另外有时不定式所修饰的名词或代词是不定式动作的地点、工具等，不定式后面也应该有必要的介词。

Please pass me some paper **to write on**

请递给我一些写字的纸。

paper 作介词 *on* 的逻辑宾语，即：

to write on some paper...（ ）

虽然 *write* 可以作及物动词，但 *paper* 不能作 *write* 的逻辑宾语，所以：

to write some paper... (×)

Please lend me something **to write with**.

请借给我写字用的东西。

something 作介词 with 的逻辑宾语，可以理解为：

to write with something 用某东西（铅笔、钢笔、粉笔等等供写字用的）写。

但如果没有 with 意思就不同了，变成了：

to write something 写某种东西（文件、故事、报告……）

注意

上述所谈不定式后边加介词时，一般不能省略介词，但当不定式修饰的词是 place, time, way 时，不定式后边的介词可以省略。

He has no money and no **place to live**.

他没有钱也没有地方住。

I think the best **way to travel**(by) is on foot.

我认为旅行的最好方式是步行。

There is no **time to think** (about).

没时间考虑了。

3. 主谓关系：不定式所修饰的名词或代词是它的逻辑主语。

The factory **to produce electricity** will be set up next year.
一座发电厂明年将要建起来。

A factory (that) which is to produce electricity will be set up next year.

定语从句

这里 (that) which 指的是工厂，所以可以理解为 factory (工厂) 是不定式 to produce electricity (发电) 的逻辑上的主语。

4. 在主谓关系中还包括当不定式所修饰的是序数词或是形容词最高级所修饰的名词时，或者这个名词被省略时，这个名词和不定式之间也是逻辑上的主谓关系。

She is always the last (person) **to speak** at the meetings.

她总是会上最后一个发言的人。

Li Ming was the first (person) **to arrive**.

李明是第一个到达的人。

2 不定式修饰 something, anything, nothing

当不定式作形容词修饰 something, anything, nothing 时当然也要放在这些词后面作后置定语，如果有形容词修饰上述三个词，应该放在它们的后面，如果又有形容词又有不定式修饰上述三个词时，词序应为

句型：something, (anything, nothing) + 形容词 + 不定式

Do you have **anything to read**?

你有什么可以读的东西吗？

Do you have **anything interesting to read**?

你有什么有趣的读物吗？

注意

语序不同，译文（意思）也不同。从语法角度来讲，不定式的语法功能不同，译文也不同。

I want **something to read**.

我想要点儿可读的东西。

(不定式 to read 作形容词用, 在句子中作定语修饰 something。)

I want to read something.

我想读点儿东西。

(不定式 to read 作名词用, 在句子中作动词 want 的宾语, 而 something 在此句中作不定式 to read 的宾语。)

3 不定式作定语时有时用主动语态表示被动含义

1. There be 句型中

There is something to do 这一句型中, 用主动语态来表示被动的含义。

There is a letter to write.

There is a letter to be written. (不常用)

有一封信要写。

不定式所修饰的词是它动作的承受者即“信要被写”。

但在 There be 句型中, 往往用主动语态表示, 由下列句子可以理解:

There is a letter(for sb.<you or me...>)to write.

(实际上省略了 for sb.某人去写, 所以用主动语态。)

There is no time to lose.(to be lost)

=There is no time for us to lose. 没什么时间可浪费的了。

There is something to pay attention to.

有一件需要注意的事情。

比较

如果句子的主语不是不定式的逻辑主语, 那不定式就需要用被动语态来表示。

I'm going to the post office, for I have a letter to post.

(主动语态)

我要到邮局去, 因为我有封信要寄。

(句子的主语 I 是不定式 to post 的逻辑主语, 是我要发信, 所以用主动语态。)

Li Ming. I'm going to the post office, I know you have an important letter to post.

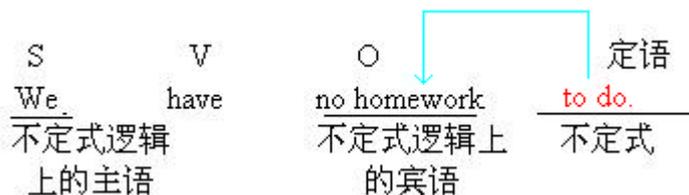
李明, 我要去邮局, 我听说你有一封重要的信要寄, 让我替你寄吧。

Thank you. But I have no letters to be posted now. (被动语态)

谢谢, 我现在没什么信要寄的。

(通过对话的上下文理解李明回答时所说“ I have no letters to be posted.” 这一句子中不定式之所以用被动语态: “ to be posted.”, 因为句子中的主语 I 不是不定式的逻辑主语, 不是我要寄, 而是对话中第一个人“ you ”、“ 你 ”要寄, 所以要用被动语态。)

2. 当不定式修饰 want, have 等动词的宾语, 而句子的主语是不定式的逻辑主语时, 用主动语态表示被动含义。



我们没什么作业可做。

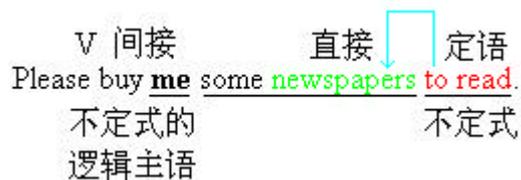
(这个句子的主语 We 又是不定式 to do 的逻辑主语, 可以理解为“ We do no homework. 我们没有作业可做”, 所以用主动语态来表示。)



玛丽要照看三个孩子。

(Mary 是不定式 to look after 的逻辑主语即“ 玛丽照看小孩 Mary looks after babies.”, 所以要用主动语态。)

3. 当不定式修饰 buy, get, give 等动词的直接宾语, 而间接宾语是不定式的逻辑主语时, 用主动语态表示被动含义。



请给我买几张可读的报纸来。

(在这一句子 me 是不定式 to read 的逻辑主语即“ 我来读”, 所以用主动语态。)



我给你几本小说, 你在旅途中阅读。

(you 是不定式 to read 的逻辑主语“ 你来看小说”, 所以不定式要用主动语态, 而不能用 to be read.)

3 不定式作副词的用法

不定式在句子中的作用有时和副词相同, 在句子中可以担任状语, 表示目的、原因, 有时也表示结果。另外当副词用的不定式也可以修饰形容词。

不定式紧跟在及物动词后面时, 它充当宾语, 不定式紧跟在不及物动词之后, 往往充当状语。

1 表原因

1. 不定式可以在表示感情的形容词后面来修饰该形容词, 表示原因。

常用于这种结构的形容词和过去分词有:

happy ,glad ,delighted ,pleased ,sorry ,eager ,anxious ,lucky , fortunate , unfortunate , proud , angry , surprised , frightened , disappointed , ready , clever , willing , foolish , worthy 等等。

He is **lucky to get here** on time.

他很幸运，按时到达这儿。

Li Ming seemed **willing to do that**.

李明似乎很高兴干那件事。

Be **careful not to catch** a cold.

小心别感冒。

2. 修饰表示感情以外的形容词

用一起这类结构中，常用的形容词有：easy , difficult , hard , comfortable , pleasant. 而此种句子的主语可以是人，也可以是物。

It is not good for your eyes **to read** in the sun.

在阳光下看书对你的眼睛不好。

The house is very comfortable **to live** in.

物

这是一座住起来很舒服的房子。

We found him was easy **to get along** with.

人

我们发现他是个很好相处的人。

2 表目的

He came **to help** me with my maths.

他来这儿是为了帮我学数学。

I study hard **to serve** the people well.

我好好学习为了将来好好为人民服务。

不定式在句子中担当状语，表目的的情况很多，很常见。

1. 放在句首，加强语气

有时为了加强语气，把作目的状语的不定式提前，提到句首来。

To serve the people well I study hard.

为了更好地为人民服务，我好好学习。

2. 在不定式前加上 in order 或 so as ' 加强语气。

如果要想再加强语气，在不定式前还可以加 in order 和 so as... (即词组 in order to do ...so as to do ...)

In order to serve the people well I study hard.

为了更好地为人民服务，我好好地学习。

I study hard **so as to serve** the people well.

为了更好地为人民服务，我好好地学习。

注意

in order to do sth.和 so as to do sth.的区别

1. so as to 引出的目的状语不能放在句首。

In order to 引出的目的状语可以放在句首或句尾。

She look a bus **so as not to be late**.

In order not to be late she book a bus.

=She took a bus in order not to be late.

她乘坐公共汽车以免迟到。

2. so as to 这一词级也可表结果，但要分开写。

{so as + 不定式 表目的

{so...as to+ 不定式 表结果

You are so kind as to show me the way. (表结果)

你真好，给我指路。

They started early so as to catch the first bus. (表目的)

他们很早就出发了，以便能赶上头班车。

They started so early as to catch the first bus. (表结果)

他们动身很早，所以(结果)就赶上头班车了。

3. 有时 so...as to do 的句型还可以表示程度。()

He was so angry as to be unable to speak.

他气得连话都说不出来了。

3 表结果

不定式经常和 only, never 连用，强调结果和失望的情绪。

I hurried to get there only to find him out.

我匆匆忙忙地赶到那儿，(没想到)他出去了。

After that day they were seperated, never to see each other again.

那天他们被分开之后，再没见过面。

4 其它用法

1. 句型: too+adj./adv.+ (for sb.) +to do sth.

在这种结构中,不定式在句子中作结果状语。在这里“too”表示“more than enough”(过分)了,就成了否定意思。

The book is too hard for the boy to read.

=The book is so hard that the byoy can't read it.

a. 这本书对于这个男孩来说是太难了,他读不了。(难得过分了,以至于不能读了,表示相反的意思)

She is too young to go to school.

=She is so young that she can't go to school.

她太小了,不能上学。(太年轻了,太小了,结果就不能上学)

This problem is too difficult (for us) to work out.

注意

用 too...to 句型,不定式 work out 不能再加上 it 代 problem。用 so...that 复合句时,则必须用 it。

不定式 to work out 用主动式而不能用被动式 to be worked out。因为这个不定式状语本身含有被动含义。

=This problem is so hard that we can't work it out.

这道题太难了,根本算不出来。

We are never too old to learn.

用 never, too 否定之否定,译文就为肯定意思了。

我们活到老，学到老。（我们绝不至于太老了而不能学习了）

b. 在这里还要说明的一点是，too 除了我们常见的上述（a.）例句中的当“more than enough”（过分）讲外，有时还当作“十分”“非常”“极其”等带有肯定意义讲，但此时形容词一般用 **eager, anxious** 等。

The students are too **anxious** to know the result of the exam.
(不定式作原因状语)

She is too **eager** to see her sister. (不定式作原因状语)
她非常渴望见到她的姐姐。

c. 在 too 前面加 only 或 but (相当于 really) 以加强语气。

The girl is only too glad to come here.

这个女孩子真是很高兴来这儿。 d. 在文章中 too...to 结构经常省略不定式。

必背！

“too...not to...”是双重否定，意思是“非常……不能不”。

She is too wise not to see that.

她很聪明，不会不懂得那一点。

The shoes are too big for me. (**to wear**)

=The shoes are much too big.

这双鞋我穿着太大了。（这双鞋对于我来说太大了，以至于不能穿）

The rice is too hot for the baby (**to eat**).

这米饭太烫了，孩子吃不了。

e. 有时句末的不定式还可以用一个介词短语来代替。

He is driving too fast **for safety**. (介词短语)

=He is driving too fast to be safe. (不定式)

他开车太快，怕不安全。

2. 不定式修饰副词 enough 的用法

He is old **enough to go** to school.

He is so old that he can go to school.

=He is too young to go to school.

他已经到了上学的年龄了。

The road is wide **enough for three horses to go**.

=The road is so wide that three horses can go.

这条马路够宽的，可以让三匹马并排走。

3. 不定式在句中作为独立成分

有时不定式在句子中作为独立结构出现，用来说明说话人的态度。一般来讲，人们已经把这引起不定式作为固定词组，固定搭配来运用。

To tell you the truth, I don't think the film is good.

说老实话，我认为这个电影并不好。

To be fair, it is not all his fault.

说句公道话，还不全是他的错。

To be frank, you are lying.

坦率地说，你在说谎。

It is a good idea, **to be sure**; but it is hard to practise.

的确，这是个好主意，但是难以实行。

To make matters worse, it began to turn dark.

更糟的天开始变黑了。

He knows English and French, not to speak of German.

他懂得英语和法语，更别说德语了。

4 不定式作宾语补足语

不定式作宾补的情况很多，常用的动词有 advise, allow, ask, beg, command, cause, expect, encourage, force, get, hate, intend, invite, instruct, like, order, oblige, prefer, persuade, permit, promise, press, request, tell, want, wish, remind, warn 等。

例：We allow you to enter the hall.

我们允许你进入这个大厅。

1 是否可以省略 to

不定式作宾语补足语时要特别注意省略 to 的情况。

1. 不定式在某些感觉动词 (feel, hear, listen to, watch, look at, notice, observe) 和使役动词 (let, have, make) 后作宾语补足语时，省去 to，但在被动语态中不可省 to。

Didn't you hear anyone say anything about it?

你难道没有听到任何人谈过这件事情吗？

Let me hear you play the piano.

让我听听你弹钢琴吧！

Don't look at other people dance.

别看别人跳舞。

The workers were made to work day and night.

注意

如果是被动语态，省去的 to 必须加上。

(被动语态)

工人们被迫日日夜夜干活。The PLA men noticed the spy steal some papers.

The spy was noticed to steal some papers (by the P.L.A men).

(被动语态)

解放军战士们注意到这个间谍偷了一些文件。

2. 在动词 help 后，to 可以省，也可以不省。

I will help him (to) clean the room.

我将要帮他打扫这间屋子。

例外

let 用于被动语气时，不定式作宾补时 to 可以省略也可以不省。

We have let him go.

He has been let go. (被动语态)

=He has been let to go .

我们已经让他走了。

2 to be 结构

动词 think ,consider ,find ,believe ,suppose ,know ,understand , take 后，不定式作宾补时常用 to be 结构。

I consider him **to be** an honest man.

=I consider him honesty.

think ,consider , find 后若不用 to be 结构，直接用形容词也可以

我认为他是一个诚实的人。

The teacher thought the answer(**to be**)quite right.

老师以为这个答案相当正确。

3 动词不定式作主语补足语

动词不定式作主语补足语要符合三个条件：

(1) 句子的谓语动词是**被动语态**。

(2) 句子的主语必须是动词**不定式逻辑上的主语**。

(3) 动词不定式在主动句中作宾语补足语。

S 谓语动词 主语补足语

The room was said to have been cleaned. (被动语态)

不定式逻辑 被动语态 不定式

上的主语

It was said(people said)that the room had been cleaned.

(主动语态)

据说这个房间已被打扫过了。

S 谓语动词 主语补足语

He was told to be quiet. (被动语态)

作不定式 被动语态 不定式

的主语

The teacher told him to be quiet. (主动语态)

└─不定式作宾语补足语

他被告知要保持安静。

必背！

不定式作主语补足语时常出现在下列结构的句子中：

be said

be reported

be known

be likely

be certain , be sure...

4 be+to do ; be about to do

be to do 和 be about to do 两种都表示将来时态，表示即将发生的事，计划之中的事。

Our teacher is **to visit** Shanghai next month.

我们老师下个月要去上海参观。

He is **about to leave** when the bell rings.

他正要离开，突然，铃声响了。

5 不定式中省去 to 的情况

1 在感官动词和使役动词之后

在感官动词及使役动词后省去 to (详见 P . 81)

感官动词有：feel , hear , see , watch , notice , observe , listen to , look at

使役动词有：let , make , have

注意 have , make , 只在当使役动词时才省去不定式作宾补时的小品词 to , 否则不省略 to。

They made a lot of paper flowers **to decorate** the room.

他们生产了许多纸花装饰这个房间。

(made 不当使役动词，没有“使得”这一意思，因此不能省略不定式的小品词 to)

Next month we'll have a lot of meetings **to attend**.

下个月我们要参加许多会。

2 有两个以上的不定式并列

当两个或两个以上的不定式并列在一起时 (尤其是用连词 and 或 or 连接时) , 第二个不定式小品词 to 可以省略。

I promised **to finish** my homework and **hand** it in on time.

我答应 (保证) 完成作业并按时交上。

The guard hardly knew whether **to laugh** or **cry**.

卫兵简直哭笑不得。

如果用逗号代替了连词 and、or 的位置，第二个动词不定式的小品词一般要保留，有时也可以省略。

I promised **to finish** my homework, **(to)hand** it in on time.

我答应完成作业并按时交上。

The boy likes to stay with his brothers, **(to)play** basketball on the playground.

这个男孩子愿意和他的兄弟们呆在一起，打篮球。

注意

在对照的场合，to 不可以被省掉。

It's better **to laugh** **than to cry**.

笑比哭好。

I haven't decided **to watch** football game **or to stay** at home this evening.

今天晚上是看足球赛还是呆在家里，我还没决定下来。

3 有介词 but , except , besides

当介词 but , except , besides 前面有实义动词 do 时，不定式在介词之后可以省去 to。

比较

They enemy can **do** nothin but (except) **surrender**.

敌人除了投降之外，别无出路。

What does he like to **do** besides **read** novels?

=What does he like besides to read novels?

除了看小说之外，他还喜欢别的吗？

The enemy had nothing to choose but (except) to surrender.
敌人除了投降之外，别无选择。

4 在下列固定词组句型中

had better (had best) +原形不定式 最好

had better (had best) not+原形不定式 最好不要

would (had) rather (sooner) +原形不定式...+than+原形不定式

would (had) as soon+原形不定式...+as+原形不定式

宁愿.....而不愿

cannot but

cannot choose but

cannot help but

} + 原形不定式 不得不 ~ (参见P . 86)

doing nothing (=not do anything) but (或 expect) +原形不定式

只 ~ (参见 P . 86)

You had better not go.

你最好别走。

He would rather look after the baby than do his homework.

他宁愿看管这个婴儿也不愿意做作业。

I can't but think so.

我不得不这样想。

You have nothing to do but wait.

你只有等待。

5 做宾语的不定式重复时

当作宾语的不定式重复时，只保留 to，为了避免重复，作宾语的不定式再次出现时往往省略，只保留不定式符号 to。(参见 P . 71 不定式作宾语)

1. 在 want , wish , like , hate , hope , try , plan , love...

后

Do you want to have a rest?

你想休息一会儿吗？

Yes, I want to, but I can't.

想啊，但是不行。

Did you get the new stamps?

你买到新邮票了吗？

No, I tried to, but there wasn't any left in that post office.

没有，我去买了，可是那个邮局里全卖完了。

2. 在 have , ought , need 等词后

I didn't mean to call you at late night, but I had to as I did have something important to tell you.

我本不打算深夜给你打电话的，但不得不给你打，因我确实有重要的事要告诉你。

3. 在 be able , used 和 be going (to)之后

I'm going to the south next week. What about you?

我下周准备去南部，你呢？

I'm going to.

我也打算去。

(此部分还可参考本章中 P. 71 不定式作宾语部分)

6 在 go, come 后面作目的状语的不定式 ()

口语中用在动词 go 和 come 后面作目的状语时, to 常可省略, 尤常见于祈使句中, 也可用于陈述句, 但 go 和 come 只能是现在式形式而不是过去式。

Please come sit here.

请过来坐在这儿。

Go ask your father.

去问问你爸爸。

you should go say "thank you".

你应该去说一声“谢谢”。

7 在系动词 be 后作表语时

当不定式在系动词后作表语时, 如果主语部分带有实义动词 do, 就可以省去 to。

The only thing I can do is lie in bed.

我唯一能做的事就是躺在床上。

What I want to do is have a good rest.

我想要做的事就是好好休息一下。

8 句型 why not do sth?/Why do sth?

Why not? (Why not do sth?) 形式上虽然是否定的, 但意思是肯定的, 是鼓励人们去做。口语中经常用它。

Why do sth? 则相反, 形式上是肯定的, 意思上则是否定的, 不鼓励人们去做。

Today is Sunday. Why not go out to relax yourself?

今天是周日, 干嘛不出去轻松一下呢?

(今天是周日, 你最好出去放松一下。)

I hear "Titanic" is very good. I want to see it. How about you?

我听说“泰坦尼克号”这个电影非常好, 我想去看它, 你呢?

Why not? When?

当然去了。什么时候?

(为什么不去呢? 什么时候去呢?)

9 几个句型和词组

1. prefer and would rather

a. prefer 和 like, love 一样, 后面可以跟不定式或动名词。

I don't like cities. I prefer to live in the countryside.

= I don't like cities. I prefer living in the countryside.

我不喜欢城市。我愿意(喜欢)住在乡村。

b. ...prefer + n/doing (动名词) to + n/doing (动名词)

喜欢.....而不喜欢.....; 宁愿.....而不愿.....

I prefer meat to fish.

我喜欢肉而不喜欢鱼。

He prefers listening to music to playing football.

他喜欢听音乐而不喜欢踢足球。

(他宁愿听音乐,也不踢足球)

c. ...prefer+to do sth. rather than (to) do sth.

.....宁愿.....而不愿.....

注意

would rather 句型的否定式,应将 not 放在 rather 之后,不可放在 would 之后,但缩写时例外。

I would rather not walk.

我不愿走路。

Wouldn't you rather walk?

你不愿走路吗?

I prefer to go to the movies rather than (to) stay home.

I prefer going to the movies to staying home.

我愿意看电影而不愿意呆在家里。

She prefers to travel rather than attend the wedding.

She prefers traveling to attending the wedding.

她宁愿去旅行也不愿参加这个婚礼。

d. would rather do sth.

would rather not do sth.

Shall we go by train?

我们坐火车好吗?

I would rather go by car.

我还是愿意坐小汽车去。

I'm tired, I'd rather not go out this evening, if you don't mind.

我累了。如果你不介意的话,今天晚上我(宁愿不出去)不想出去。

e. would rather do sth. than (do) sth. else

宁愿.....而不愿

I'd rather stay at home tonight than go to the cinema.

今天晚上我宁愿呆在家里而不愿意看电影。

f. ...would rather + 句子(过去时)(虚拟语气)

你要做.....

Shall I stay here?

我可以呆在这儿吗?

I'd rather you came with us.

你还是和我们一起吧。

I'd rather cook the dinner now. And I'd rather you cooked the dinner now.

我现在愿意做饭。我想你现在也应该做饭。

(would rather 后面的句子要用过去时,不表示时态,而只是一种语气,所以这个句型是虚拟语气的一种。)

I'd rather you didn't tell anyone what I said.

你最好别告诉任何人我所说的话。

注意

否定时，是否定后面的句子。

2. advise, allow, permit, forbid 的用法

a. advise/allow/permit/forbid **doing sth.**

He advised **going** at once.

他建议立即走。

She doesn't allow **smoking** in the house.

她不允许在这个房间吸烟。

The policeman permitted his **parking** there.

警察不允许他在那里停车。

My parents forbade my **watching** TV except on Sundays.

除了周日外我父母不准我看电视。

b. advise/allow/permit/forbid **sb. to do sth.**

The doctor advised me **to stop** smoking.

医生建议我（别吸烟）戒烟。

She doesn't allow us **to smoke** here but she allows her husband to smoke here.

她不允许我们在这儿吸烟，但允许她丈夫在这儿吸烟。

The policeman permitted him **to park** there.

警察允许他在那里停车。

My parents forbade me **to watch** TV except on Sundays.

我的父母禁止我看电视，除了周日以外。

3. want/wish/promise/hope+不定式

其用法的注意事项（请看初级版中第十四章不定式部分 P.186）

4. prevent/save/keep/stop... from(doing)sth.

阻止某人做某事

a. prevent/stop sb. from(doing)sth.

此句型中 from 可以省略，但在被动语态中 from 不可省去。

There was nothing to prevent her(from)doing so.

没有什么东西能阻止她这样做。

比较

That's the best way to prevent such a thing(from)happening again.

这是防止这种事情再发生的最好办法。

He was prevented by illness **from** joining in the expedition.

（被动语态）

他因病未能参加这次探险活动。

比较

We all tried to stop him(from)smoking in bed.

我们都不让他在床上吸烟。

We were stopped by him from making any noise.（被动语态）

他不让我们发生任何噪音。

b. save sb. from doing sth.

The climbers put a rope round themselves to save them from falling.

攀登者身上系着绳子，以防摔落下去。

c. keep sb. from doing

注意

此句型中 from 不能省略。

Can't you keep him from forgetting?

难道你能让他不忘记什么吗？

(难道你能防止避免他忘记什么吗？)

What shall I do to keep this from getting dirty?

我该怎么办才能不把这东西弄脏呢？

forbid sb. to do sth.

forbid sb. to do sth. 也是阻止某人做某事的意思。

Their parents forbade them to go.

他们父母亲不让他们去。

He was strictly forbidden to drink tea.

他被严格禁止喝茶。

5. suggest 当“建议”讲时

a. suggest +名词或代词

She suggested a way out of the difficulty.

她提出了一个克服困难的办法。

b. suggest +动名词 I suggested putting the meeting off. 我建议会议延期。 He suggested my(me) staying here.

他建议我待在这里。

c. suggest +从句(主语+should +V.)

should 可省略。

The teacher suggested that the students (should) relax themselves on Sunday.

老师建议学生们周日去放松一下。

He suggested that we(should) come another day.

他建议我们改天再来。

suggest 当“表明”讲时，后面接宾语从句，用陈述语气。

On the boy's face there was a half-smile that seemed to suggest that he was happy to have given his life for his country.

小男孩脸上的微笑表明他很幸福，因为他已经把他的生命献给了他的国家。

His pale face suggests he is in poor health.

他脸色苍白，说明他身体不好。

Her expression suggested that she was angry. (happy, sad, satisfied, frightened...)

她脸上的表情表明她生气(愉快、难过、满意、害怕.....)。

注意

suggest 后不跟不定式

(×) suggest to do sth.

(×) suggest sb. to do sth.

6 不定式的否定·连接代(副)词+不定式

1 不定式的否定式

句型 “not +不定式” ; “never +不定式”

注意此句型在间接引语和直接引语中的变换。

My father told me not to skate on the lake. (间接引语)

My father told me: “Don't skate on the lake.”

(直接引语)

我爸爸告诉过我不要让我湖上溜冰。

He warned his younger brother not to open the door.

(间接引语)

He warned his younger brother: “Don't open the door.” (直接引语)

他警告他的弟弟不要打开门。

The manager asked him not to be late (间接引语)

The manager said to him: “Don't be late.” (直接引语)

经理告诉他不要迟到。

She tried not to cry.

她试着不要哭。

My father told me never to see her again. (间接引语)

My father told me: “Never to see her again.” (直接引语)

我父亲告诉我不能再去看她。

有时, 为了加强语气, 用 never 代替 not.

Mrs. Smith told her daughter never to drive after drinking.

史密斯太太告诉她的女儿酒后不能开车。

2 连接代词或副词+不定式

有时不定式前面可以带一个连接代词或副词, 相当于一个名词短语, 它的作用相当于一个名词从句, 这种结构主要用在一些动作词后作宾语。这些动词是: show, wonder, remember, forget, explain, tell, show, teach, discuss... 这种结构也可以作主语、表语、宾补和状语。

Mr. Li taught us how to work out the difficult problem. (宾语)

李先生教我们如何解难题。

Have you decided whether to go or not? (宾语)

你决定了吗? 是走还是不走?

Please tell me when to start? (宾语)

请告诉我何时出发?

What to do next hasn't been discussed. (主语)

下一步做什么还没讨论呢。

The big problem is how to deal with the waste paper. (表语)

最大的问题是如何处理这些废纸。

Last summer I took a course on how to make dresses. (介宾)

去年夏天，我选了一门如何做衣服的课程。

必背！

数种连接代词（副词）+不定式的形式

how to ~ 如何

what to ~ 做什么

when to ~ 何时

where to ~ 何地

which to ~ 做哪个

7 不定式的时态

不定式的时态可以用一般式、进行式、完成式和完成进行式表示。

1 不定式的一般式

不定式一般形式所表示的动作通常与主要谓语所表示的动作或状态同时或几乎同时发生，或是在它之后发生，我们前面所使用的都是不定式的一般式。

I am glad to see you.

我很高兴见到你。

（看到你的同时，我很高兴）

He has decided to give her some money.

他已决定要给她一些钱。

（给钱这一个动作要发生在决定之后）

2 不定式的进行式

不定式的进行式所表示的动作通常与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生。它可以用来构成复合谓语、复合宾语、宾语。

They seemed to be getting along well. (复合谓语)

It seemed that they were getting along well. (复合句：从句中用进行时态)

他们似乎相处得很好。

The teacher didn't expect me to be working the whole night.

(复合宾语)

老师没有想到我工作了一夜。

He pretended to be working hard when his boss passed him. (宾语)

当他的老板经过他那儿时，他假装努力的在干活儿。

3 不定式的完成式

不定式的完成式主要在下列几种情况下应用：

1. 表示发生在主要的动词之前的动作

不定式所表示的动作发生在谓语动作状态之前。

常用于动词 appear, seem, happen, be said, be reported, be believed, be known, be thought, be likely...

I am sorry to have kept you waiting.

I am sorry that I have kept you waiting. (复合句：更明显看出时态)

对不起，让你久等了。（“你”等的时间很长，“我”才到，才说 sorry。）

He happened to **have seen** the film before.

=It happened that he had seen the film before.

他碰巧以前看过这个电影。

2. 表过去没有实现的期待或计划

可用表希望、计划等动词的过去时加上完成时不定式的形式来表达。

hoped, promised, wanted
wished, expected, planned +to + have +过去分词

He wanted **to have met** you at the airport, but he didn't get there in time. (事情已经发生)

比较

He wants to meet you at the airport. (事情还没发生)

他想去机场接你。(你还没到, meet 这一动作发生在 want 后)

他原想去机场接你,但他没及时赶到那儿(没接成)。

We wanted **to have done** good deeds for the poor people last month.

我们原计划上个月为贫困人们做些好事。(没做成)

3. 在 should(would)like 后面 ()

表示未能实现的愿望。

I should (would)like **to have given** her the gift.

比较

I should(would)like **to give her** the gift.

我愿意(想)把一礼物送给她。(还没送)

我本想把这个礼物送给她的。(没送成)

He would like **to have played** the violin at the concert.

他愿意(想)在音乐会上拉小提琴的。(实际上没拉成)

4. should(ought to)+have done

表示应该做而没有做的事。

You should have finished your homework.

比较

You **ought to(should)finish** your homework.

你们应该完成作业。(这是你的职责,动作还没发生)

你应该完成作业。(实际上你没完成,有责备的意思)

You shouldn't have been there.

你不应该去那儿。(可是你去了。责备)

5. need; needn't +have done

表示一种不必要的过去的动作。

We needn't have worried about him.

我们没必要为他担心。(事实上,他很好,我们白替他担心了)

You needn't have visited there last week.

比较

You needn't visit there next week.

下周你不必参观那儿。(动作还没做)

上周你没必要去那儿。(实际上你已经去了)

6. may, might +have done

表示对过去动作的一种没有把握的推测(用于肯定句中)。

Nobody opened the door. She **may(might)have left**.

没人开门,她可能已经走了。

7. must +have done

表示对过去动作的一种的把握肯定的推测(用于肯定句中)。

The road is all wet. It **must have rained** yesterday.

路全湿了,昨天肯定下雨了。

8. can't couldn't +have done

表示对过去动作的一种推测(用于否定句中)。

I saw her yesterday in Shanghai. She **can't have arrived** in New York now.

我昨天在上海看见她了,现在她不可能已经到纽约了。

(以上 4 .5 .6 .7 .8 .各节可参照本书中虚拟语气之章节和助动词·情态动词章节。)

比较

一般式不定式:

I'm glad to see you.

be glad 与 see 的动作同时发生。(一般是刚见面,表示欢迎)

完成式不定式:

I'm glad to have met you.

指“见你”这一动作在以前发生,如送别时。

8 不定式的语态

不定式的主动语态: **to +动词原形**。(前面所使用的基本上是主动语态)

不定式的被动语态: **to be +过去分词(表被动)**

当不定式的逻辑主语是不定式所表示的动作的对象时(或是动作的承受者时)不定式一般要用被动式。它也可以在句中作主语、宾语、宾补、定语和状语。

It is an honour for me **to be invited** to attend the meeting.

我很荣幸能够被邀请参加这个会议。

(for me 中,me 是不定式的逻辑主语,是 me(我)被邀请,是被动形式)

Everyone likes the hero **to be praised**

每个人都喜欢这位英雄被表扬。

Nothing is allowed **to be taken** out of the building.

任何东西都不能拿出这座大楼。

(可参照 P.74 不定式作定语时有时用主动语态表示被动含义)

非谓语动词语法功能比较： 代表有此项语法功能							
	主语	宾语	定语	状语	表语	宾补	
不定式							起名词、形容词、副词作用
动名词							起名词作用
分词							起副词、形容词作用

具体区别，请详见非谓语动词各章。

实力测验

一. 用 of 或 for 填空

1. It's necessary _____ us to master a language.
2. It's unwise _____ them to refuse our help.
3. It is very important _____ us to study some rules.
4. It is unpracticable _____ us to finish such a difficult task in such short time.
5. It's wrong _____ a person to think only of himself.

二. 选出与原题意思一样的句子

1. The box was so heavy that I could not lift it.
 - A. The box was heavy enough to lift.
 - B. The box was too heavy for me to lift it.
 - C. To lift the box was too heavy for me.
 - D. the box was too heavy for me lift it.
2. You are so rich that you can buy the new house.
 - A. You are too rich to buy the new house.
 - B. You can buy the new house to be rich.
 - C. You are rich enough to buy the new house.
 - D. You are such rich that you can buy the new house.
3. It is dangerous to swim in this river.
 - A. This river is dangerous to swim in.
 - B. This river is dangerous to swim.
 - C. You are dangerous to swim in this river.
 - D. To us to swim in this river is dangerous.
4. He seems to have known the fact.
 - A. It seems for him to know the fact.
 - B. It seems that he knows the fact.
 - C. It seems that he knew the fact.
 - D. He seems to be knowing the fact.

三. 选择真空

1. I'm glad _____ you.
 - A. meet
 - B. meeting
 - C. to meet
 - D. met

2. It was foolish _____ you to make such a mistake.
A . for
B . of
C . to
D . at
3. I have never seen her _____.
A . to smile
B . to smiling
C . smiling
D . smile
4. The weather was _____ cold to go out without a coat.
A . such
B . so
C . too
D . enough
5. He was made _____ too hard.
A . work
B . working
C . to work
D . to be work
6. The enemy spy had no choice but _____ the truth.
A . to tell
B . tell
C . telling
D . told
7. The one thing I hate to do is _____ to bed before I feel tired.
A . go
B . to go
C . went
D . gone
8. There is nothing for us to do except _____ the meeting.
A . to put off
B . put off
C . putting off
D . to be put off

四 . 选择题 (历届高考题)

1. Have you decided when _____?
A . to leave
B . to be leaving
C . will you leave
D . are you leaving
2. When do you think we'll leave tomorrow?(85)
You'd better _____ ready at seven o'clock.
A . to be

- B . be
C . being
D . been
3. Tell him _____the window.(86)
A . to shut not
B . not to shut
C . to not shut
D . not shut
4. Do you know Mr. Smith?
Yes, He's a strange man. We find _____difficult to work with him.(86)
A . us
B . it
C . him
D . you
5. It was foolish ____you to give up what you right ly owned. (87)
A . for
B . of
C . about
D . form
6. It's freezing outside. You _____put on your overcoat. (87)
A . had better
B . had better to
C . would better
D . would better to
7. The chair looks rather hard, but in fact it is very comfortable to _____.(88)
A . sit
B . be sat
C . be sat on
D . sit on
8. Is _____necessary to take off our shoes when we enter the lab?(88)
A . everyone
B . this
C . here
D . it
9. Is _____necessary to complete the design before National Day?(89)
A . this
B . that
C . it
D . he
10. She pretended _____me when I passed by. (89)

- A . not to see
 B . not seeing
 C . to not see
 D . having not seen
11. Last summer, I took a course on _____. (90)
 A . how to make dresses
 B . how dresses be made
12. I don't think _____ possible to master a foreign language without much memory work. (90)
 A . this
 B . that
 C . its
 D . it
13. Mrs. Smith warned her daughter _____ after drinking. (91)
 A . never to drive
 B . to never drive
 C . never driving
 D . never drive
14. Shall we go skating or stay at home?
 Which _____ do yourself? (92)
 A . do you rather
 B . would you rather
15. There's so many kind of tape-recorders on sale that I can't make up my mind _____ to buy. (92)
 A . what
 B . which
 C . how
 D . where
16. Charles Babbage is generally considered _____ the first computer. (93)
 A . to have invented
 B . inventing
 C . to invent
 D . having invented
17. Rather than _____ on a crowded bus, he always prefers _____ a bicycle. (94)
 A . ride; ride B . riding; ride
 C . ride; to ride D . to ride; riding
18. We agreed _____ here but so far she hasn't turned up yet. (95)
 A . having met B . meeting
 C . to meet D . to have met
19. Paul doesn't have to be made _____. He always works hard.
 A . learn B . to learn
 C . learned D . learning

解答

一 .

1. for 2. of 3. for 4. for 5. of

二 .

1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B

三 .

1. C 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. C

6. A 7. B 8. B

四 .

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. B

6. A 7. D 8. D 9. C 10. A

11. A 12. D 13. A 14. B 15. B

16. A 17. C 18. C 19. B

第 4 章 动名词

第 4 章 动名词

1. 动名词的用法 106

2. 动名词的时态和语态 117

动名词是三种非谓语动词的一种。由动词原形加 ing 构成，与现在分词的形式相同。动名词在句子中起名词的作用，因此它在句子中可以作主语、表语、宾语（介词宾语和动词宾语），还可以作定语。

在句子中动名词虽然起名词作用，但它仍然具有动词的若干特点；它可以有自己的宾语和状语。

主语

Learning English is difficult.

（English 是 learning 的宾语）

学习英语很难。

表语

His job is **driving** a bus.

（a bus 是 driving 的宾语）

他的工作是开公共汽车。

动宾

I enjoy **dancing**.

我喜欢跳舞。

介宾

I have got used to **living** in the countryside.

（in the countryside 是 living 的状语）

我住在乡村已经习惯了。

定语

Take some **sleeping**-tablets, and you will soon fall asleep.

吃几颗安眠药，你很快就入睡的。

同时可以在动名词的前面加上物主代词或名词的所有格（有时可以用宾格）来表示它逻辑上的主语，使动名词的意思更完整。

Mary's being late again made her teacher very angry.

玛丽的再次迟到使她的老师非常生气。

Do you mind **my (me) opening** the door?

我开开门，你介意吗？

动名词的形式主要有以下四种（以 write 为例）：

时式 \ 语态	主动语态	被动语态
	一般式	动词原形+ing writing
完成式	having+过去分词 having written	having been +过去分词 having been written

1 动名词的用法

1 动名词作主语

Talking mends no holes.

空谈无济于事。

Seeing is believing.

眼见为实。

Having done the work in an experience you'll never forget.

做过这种工作，就会使你永生难忘。

动名词作主语时，谓语动词一律用单数。详见上三例。

1. 用 It 作形式主语

用动名词作主语时，和动词不定式一样，有时也用 It 作形式主语。

It is no use(useless) talking too much.

=Talking too much is no use(useless).

说得太多了没有用处。

It's no good crying.

=Crying is no good.

哭没什么好处。

It trains the ear listening to music.

=Listening to music trains the ear.

听音乐可以训练耳朵。

必背！

句型：

It is no use }
It is no good } + ~ing

= It is { of no use }
 { useless } to ~

.....是没有用的

2. 在 there be 句型中 ()

只能用动名词作主语 (不用不定式)

句型：There is no+ ~ing (.....是不可能的)

=It is impossible to ~

=No one can ~ (or We cannot ~)

There is no telling what will happen.

=It is impossible to tell what will happen. (不定式)

=No one can tell what will happen.

无法预言将会发生什么事情。

There is no getting along with him.

=It is difficult to get along with him. (不定式)

他这个人很难相处。

2 动名词作表语

主语	动词	表语
His hobby	is	painting.

我的爱好是绘画。

What he likes best	is	making jokes.
--------------------	----	---------------

他最喜欢的是开玩笑。

动名词作表语时一般表示比较抽象的习惯性的动作，表语和主语常常可以互换。

His hobby is painting

Painting is his hobby. (动名词 painting 成为主语)

绘画是他的爱好。

What he likes best is making jokes.

Making jokes is what he likes best.

开玩笑是他所最喜欢的了。

One of his bad habits is not speaking clearly.

Not speaking clearly is one of his bad habits.

说话不清楚是他的恶习之一。

3 动名词和不定式在句子中作主语和表语的区别

1. 一般情况下两者区别不大，有时可以通用。

Seeing is believing.

主语 表语

=To see is to believe.

眼见为实。

It is dangerous playing with explosives.

=It is dangerous to play with explosives

玩炸药是危险的。

2. 有时，动名词和不定式也有一些区别，主要表现在以下几点：

a. 动名词更接近于名词，所表示的动作比较抽象，或者是习惯性的，而不定式多表示某次比较具体的动作，特别是将来的动作。

His hobby is painting. (动名词)

他的爱好是绘画。

In summer what he wants to do is to paint. (不定式)

在夏天，他想要做的就是绘画。

b. 在口语中和疑问句中，常用动名词，而不用不定式。

Does your saying that mean anything to him?

你说这话对他能起作用吗？

惯用语

c. It is no use(good)doing sth. (.....是没有用的)

It is important/necessary /advisable...to do sth.

但是 It's no use (good)to do sth 并不是错的，有时也可以用，尤其是指具体的情况时。

It's no use to ask the teacher. He has no idea of it.

关于这件事问这个老师也没用，他对这件事一点也不知道。

一般情况下，尤其是在中学阶段，It's no use(good)后面用动名词的情况是绝大多数。

It is no good being a liar.

说谎是没有好处的。

It's no good learning English words by heart without knowing

how to use them.

光死记英语单词而不懂如何运用不是好方法。

It's no use **crying** over spilt milk.

注意

某些成语和句型有严格要求，一定要用动名词。

覆水难收。

It's very important **to attend** meetings.

参加会议很重要。

It's advisable **to work out** a plan before we start to work.

应该在开始工作之前制订一个计划。

4 动名词作宾语

Our monitor suggested **having** a discussion of this subject.

我们的班长建议讨论这个题目。

The rain prevented us from **going** out.

由于下雨，我们没有出去。

动名词可以作动词的宾语，也可作介词的宾语。有些动词后只能跟动名词作它的宾语，而有些动词后面只能用不定式作它的宾语，而有的动词则动名词、不定式都可以作它的宾语，且区别不大，有的则区别很大。

1. 只能用动名词作宾语的动词和词组

advise 建议

allow 允许

resist 抵抗

admit 承认

escape 逃脱

risk 冒险

avoid 避免

forgive 原谅

suggest 建议

consider 考虑

imagine 想像

understand 了解

delay 耽误

mind 介意

appreciate 感谢，欣赏

enjoy 喜欢

keep 保持

can't help doing sth. 情不自禁

自禁

excuse 原谅

miss 错过

put off 推迟

finish 完成

practise 练习

give up 放弃

deny 否认

prevent 阻挡，阻止

I can't imagine **doing** that with them.

我不能想像和他们在一起做那件事。

She denied **making** a mistake.

她否认犯了一个错误。

You must try your best to avoid **meeting** him in that street.

你必须尽量设法避免在那条街上遇见他。

When I heard his voice, I couldn't help **thinking** of my father.

当我听到他的声音时，我不禁想起了我的爸爸。

The doctor advised me **giving up** smoking and drinking.

医生劝我戒烟和酒。

You'd better put off **having** the meeting next month.

你最好把这个会议推到下个月。

2. 在介词后面作宾语

动名词跟在一些固定的词组后作宾语。

insist on 坚持	excuse...for 为.....而原谅
think of 想到	devote...to 把.....贡献
look forward to 盼望	know of 对.....了解
be(get)used to 习惯于	set about 动手去做.....
be proud of 为.....自豪, 骄傲	spend...in 在.....花费
be succeed in 在.....成功	spend...(in)doing sth. 花.....做

某事

be fond of 喜欢	be busy(in)doing(sth) 忙于做某
---------------	----------------------------

事

be good at 擅长于.....	be afraid of 为.....而害怕
be interested in 对.....感兴趣	be tired of 厌烦.....
dream of 梦想	be sick of 对.....感到恶心
hear of 听说	be ashamed of 为.....感到喜悦
prevent...from 避免	add to 加上
keep...from 避免	lead to 导致
stop...from 避免	get to 开始
be engaged in 从事于	come to 谈到
depend on 依靠	stick to 坚持
thank...for 为.....而感谢	be sentenced to 宣判
feel like 愿意做什么	

There is / are or I / We have	{ (some)difficulty (some)trouble problem fun pleasure a good time a hard time }	} (in) doing
-------------------------------	--	--------------

There is no	{ need use harm hurry }	} + (in) + doing
-------------	---	------------------

I'm proud of **being** a Chinese.

作为一个中国人,我感到骄傲自豪。

Our teacher has devoted her life to her **teaching**.

我们的老师把她的一生都贡献给了教育事业。

He insisted on **doing** the same experiments hundreds of times.

他坚持做同样的实验做了成百上千次。

Today I don't feel like **listening** to some music.

今天我不愿意听音乐。

On **hearing** his boss' voice, he turned off the switch at once.

他一听见他老板的声音,立刻把开关关了。

Before **leaving** here please call me.

离开这儿之前，请给我打电话。

I know the way of **working out** the problem.

我知道解这道题的思路。

I have some difficulty(in) **finding out** when the train leaves.

在弄清这辆火车何时开车这个问题上遇到些困难。

We had a good time(in) **celebrating** his birthday.

庆祝他的生日，我们玩得很愉快。

There is no harm(in) **pointing out** his mistakes.

指出他的错误来对他没什么害处。

We spent two weeks(in) **visiting** the city.

我们花费了二周参观这座城市。

Now they are busy(in) **preparing** their lessons.

比较

Now they **are busy with** their lessons.

在些句型中 with 后只能跟名词或代词，如果跟动名词则用 be busy(in)doing sth.' in 常常省略。

现在他们正忙于准备他们的功课。

3. 动名词和不定式均可作宾语且区别不大者

常见于 continue, begin, start 这些动词

After finishing his composition he continued **reading(to read)** a novel.

完成了作文之后，他继续读一本小说。

They usually begin to **work(working)** at nine in the morning.

他们通常是上午九点钟开始工作。

I prefer **making(to make)** a plan before I go over our lessons.

我在复习功课之前宁愿做一个计划。

4. 动名词和不定式均可作宾语且有些区别者

常见于 like, hate, learn, prefer, love...这些动词

I like **skating**. But I don't like **to skate** today.

我喜欢滑冰，但是我今天不想去滑冰。

(like skating 是指一贯的、习惯性的爱好，而 like to skate 是指暂时的动作。)

比较

She hates **to smoke** before other people.

她不喜欢在别人面前吸烟。

(不定式的逻辑主语是 she，是指她吸烟)

She hates **smoking**.

她不喜欢吸烟。

(动名词的逻辑主语不只是句子的主语 she，还有别的人)

比较

The girl has learned **to cook**.

这个小姑娘已经学会做饭了。(现在会做饭)

The girl has learned **cooking**.

这个小姑娘会做饭(现在可能做得好，也许不太好)

5. 动名词和不定式都可以作宾语，但在意义上有很大区别

a. remember, forget, regret + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{动名词——动作已经发生} \\ \text{不定式——动作尚未发生} \end{array} \right.$

动名词表示的动作在谓语动词之前发生，指已做的动作。

不定式表示的动作在谓语动词之后发生，动作还没发生，指将来的动作。

比较

I remember **giving** the letter to him.

我记得把信给他了。

I will remember **to give** the letter to him.

我会记得把这封信交给他。

(动名词 giving 表示一个在 remember 之前发生过的动作不定式 to give 表示一个在 remember 之后发生的将来的动作。)

比较

I forget **giving** the letter him.

我忘了已经反信给他了。

I'm afraid I will forget **to give** the letter to him.

我担心我会忘了把这封信交给他。

(动名词 giving 表示在 forget 之前发生的动作不定式 to give 表示在 remember 之后发生的将来的动作)

比较

I regret **accepting** your advice.

我真后悔听了你的建议。

I regret **to tell you** that I won't accept your advice.

我十分遗憾地(要)告诉你，我不准备接受你的意见。

(动名词 accepting, 指在 regret 之前已发生过的动作。不定式 to tell, 表示在 regret 之后或同时的一个动作。)

b. try + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{动名词——试一试 (= do one's best to do ~)} \\ \text{不定式——设法去做某事} \end{array} \right.$

Never mind. Try **doing** it in another way.

没关系，试试用另一种方法做。

You must try **to do** it well.

你必须尽量(设法)把它做好。

c. mean + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{动名词——意味着(主语一般是物)} \\ \text{不定式——企图, 打算去做... (主语一般是人)} \end{array} \right.$

Sure, At 5 a. m. I mean **to get up** early.

对, 是5点钟, 我打算早点儿起床。

Catching the first bus means **getting up** early.

赶上头班车就意味着要早起。

d. go on + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{动名词——继续做某事 (= continue to do / doing ~)} \\ \text{不定式——接着做的某事 (= do sth next)} \end{array} \right.$

They went on **talking about** the education.

他们继续谈论教育问题。（在中断谈话之前他们就谈论着教育，之后又继续同一内容）

They went on **to talk about** the education.

他们接下去就谈教育问题了。（指在中断谈话之前讲的不是教育问题）

e . stop + { 动名词——停止做某事
不定式——停下来（一件事）开始做另一件事

(=stop sth. to do another)

说明

stop 和 go on 后面的不定式不是宾语而是状语。

stop 和 go on 后面的动名词是宾语。

比较

They stopped **quarrelling**.

他们停止了争吵。

They stopped **to quarrel**.

=They stopped what they were doing in order to quarrel.

他们停下来，争吵起来了。

f . learn + { 动名词——学习
不定式——学会了

Although she is only seven, she has learned **to skate** skillfully.

她虽然才七岁，但是她很会溜冰。

She has been learning **skating** for five years.

她学溜冰五年了。

注意

有时系表结构的 be used to(习惯于) 易和被动语态 be used to(被用于~) 相混。

Coal **is used to** produce electricity, to cook our food and to keep us warm.

(被动语态)

人们用煤发电、煮饭和取暖。

6. 易混淆的词组

词组 \ 区别	意义	to 的词性	时态	used 读音
used to do sth.	过去习惯性的动作或状态，而现在不再发生	不定式的小品词	过去时	[ju:zd]
be(get, become) used to doing sth./sth.	习惯于做什么/某事物	介词	用于各种时态	[j:st]

I **used to live** in the countryside.

我过去曾经住在农村。（我现在不住在农村）

used to do sth.和 would...都可以表示过去多次发生的习惯动作，但它们之间是有区别的。（详见本书中第6章助动词和情态动词的 would 和 used to 一节。）

I am used to living in the countryside.

我现在已经习惯于住在农村了。

He never used to smoke as much as he does now.

他过去吸烟从来没有像现在那么多。

Now he has gotten to smoking so much.

现在他已习惯吸许多烟了。

5 动名词作定语

drinking water 饮用水

walking stick 手杖

smoking room 吸烟室

reading room 阅览室 writing desk 写字台 dancing-teacher

舞蹈老师

动名词一般只以单个的形式而不能以短语的形式作定语，它的位置只能放在它所修饰词的前面。动名词作定语**一般表示所修饰的用途**。读音时，只有动名词重读，它所修饰的词并不重读。

a sleeping car 卧车

单个的动名词，表 car 的用途（sleeping 重读，而 car 不重读）

动名词定语和不定式语的区别如下：

1. 动名词定语在它修饰的前面，而不定式语要放在它所修饰的后面。

The swimming pool belongs to our school.

游泳池属于我们学校。（是我们学校的）

I've something important to do.

我有重要的事去做。

2. 动名词定语表示所修饰的用途或使用的，而不定式定语表示的动作性较强，所修饰往往是不定式的承受者。（逻辑宾语）

He wants to improve his teaching method.

他想改进他的教学方法。

Do you have anything to say?

你有什么话要说吗？

（anything 是 to say 的逻辑上的宾语。）

6 动名词的否定式和动名词短语

1. 动名词的否定式：not + 动名词

I must apologize not letting you know ahead of time.

事先没让你知道，我必须向你道歉。

His not getting to the station on time make everyone worried.

他没准时到车站使每个人都担心。

I'm sorry for not being there.

请原谅我没去那儿。（我没去那儿，十分对不起。）

2. 动名词短语

物主代语
名词的所有格 +动名词

此时物主代词和名词的所有格是这个动名词的逻辑主语，动名词短语可以作主语、表语和宾语（动词宾语和介词宾语）

Li Ming's being late made his teacher very angry. (主语)

李明的迟到使他的老师非常生气。

I think the big problem is their not having enough time.

我认为最大的问题是他们没有足够的时间。(表语)

Do you mind my leaving now?

=Do you mind me leaving now? (宾语)

你现在离开你介意吗？

Do you mind Li Ming's asking some questions?

=Do you mind Li Ming asking some questions?

李明问问题你介意吗？

注意

动名词短语如果不作主语，它的逻辑主语可以是代词的宾格（见上面上例），和名词的普通格（见上面下例），但如果作主语，那只能是物主代词和名词的所有格。

He will be surprised at my calling.

=He will be surprised at me calling.

他对我打电话人感到惊奇的。

We all worry about Mary's going there alone.

=We all worry about Mary going there alone.

我们大家都为玛丽独自去那儿感到担心。

3. 有时动名词和动名词短语在句子中的意思有较大的不同，但大多数的情况下区别不大，只不过动名词短语表示的内容更具体一些。

比较

Do you mind opening the door?

劳驾你打开门好吗？

(句子的主语 you 做这个动作)

Do you mind my(me) opening the door?

我打开门你介意吗？

(动名词短语中的动名词的逻辑主语 me(my) 来做这个动作)

2 动名词的时态和语态

1 动名词的时态

1. 动名词的一般形式

表示泛指的一般性动作，即动作发生的时间并不明确；或者动名词所表示的动作与谓语动词的动作同时发生或在它的动作之后发生。

I enjoy listening to music.

我非常喜欢听音乐。

(动名词所表示的时间观念并不明确)

The child has been used to **playing** football.

这个小孩已经适应了踢足球了。

(动名词所表示的动作与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生)

I'm looking forward to **seeing** you soon.

我期待很快见到你。

(动名词所表示的动作发生的时间 seeing 在谓语动词所表示的动作 look forward to 后发生)

2. 动名词的完成式

所表示的动作在谓语动词所表示的动作之前发生。

He is praised for **having devoted** his whole life to the country.

他因为已把自己的一生贡献给这个国家而受到表扬。

You regret **not having taken** the doctor's advice, do you? 你后悔没听大夫的劝告了吧? Thank you for **having helped** me so much. 谢谢你给了我这么多的帮助。

3. 有时, 通过上下文可以明显地看出动名词和谓语动词的时间先后时, 或者在一些动词或短语中尽管动名词所表示的动作是在谓语动词之前发生, 我们也常用一般式来代替完成式, 或者两者通用, 这些动词包括: remember, forget, apologize, excuse sb. for sth., thank sb. for sth.。

Thank you for **having helped** me so much.

=Thank you for **helping** me so much.

谢谢你给了我这么多的帮忙。

I don't remember **having received** his letter.

=I don't remember **receiving** his letter.

我不记得收到过他的信。

注意

on doing sth. 一般 on (介词) 后只能跟动名词一般式。

on doing sth

=as soon as...

On hearing the news he jumped.

一听到这个消息, 他跳了起来。

2 动名词的语态

1. 动名词被动词态

当动名词逻辑上的主语是动名词所表示的动作的对象时, 动名词一般要用它的被动式。

The squirrel was lucky that **it** just missed **being caught**.

动名词逻辑上的主语=动名词动作的对象

(it =the squirrel)

这只松鼠很幸运, 它恰恰逃脱出去。

Before **being used**, the machine must be checked.

这台机器在运转之前必须被检查一下。

注意

口语中动名词的完成形式和被动形式较少运用, 多用从句和不定式

短语。

比较

He insisted on **being sent** to hospital.

└动名词逻辑上的主语=动名词动作的对象

他坚持要把他自己送到医院中去。

他坚持他自己被送到医院去。

He insisted no **sending her** to hospital.

└动名词逻辑上的主语└动名词动作的对象

他坚持要把她送到医院中去。

2. 动名词的主动形式代替被动形式

常见句型如下：

a. 主语 + $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{want} \\ \text{need} \\ \text{require} \\ \text{(deserve)} \end{array} \right\} \text{ (需要) + doing}$
(通常是物) (动名词的主动形式)

= 主语 + $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{want} \\ \text{need} \\ \text{require} \\ \text{(deserve)} \end{array} \right\} \text{ (需要) + to be done}$
(不定式的被动形式)

The radio wants(needs, requires)**repairing**.

=The radio wants(needs, requires)**to be repaired**.

这台收音机需要修理了。

The babies want(need, require)**to be examined**.

这些婴儿们需要体检了。

The sick woman needs(wants, requires)**looking after**.

=The sick woman needs(wants, requires) **to be looked after**.

这位病妇女需要照顾。

b. 主语+be worth doing

= 主语 + be worthy + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to be done()} \\ \text{of being done} \end{array} \right.$

The book is (well)worth **reading** again.

注意

此句型中用 well 修饰 worth，而不用 very，同时 reading 后面不能跟 it，因为 reading 的逻辑主语就是句子的主语 The book，不能再重复出现。

=The book is worthy **to be read**.

=The book is worthy **of being read**.

这本书非常(很)值得再读一遍。

The piano is well worth **buying**.

=The piano is worthy **to be bought**.

=The piano is worthy **of being bought**.

这架钢琴买得很值得(值得一买)。

These honest men are worth respecting and depending on.
=These honest men are worthy to be respected and depended on.
=These honest men are worthy of being respected and being depended on.

这些诚实的人值得尊敬和信赖。

Practice 实力测验

一. 选择填空

1. Look at that ____ dog.
A. running
B. run
C. to run
D. beeing reen
2. That's not a new car. It's a ____ car.
A. using
B. used
C. use
D. having used
3. Do you have a letter ____ in English?
A. writing
B. written
C. to write
D. having been written
4. Who is the girl ____ a letter there?
A. writing
B. written
C. to write
D. being written
5. The man ____ a desk is my father.
A. making
B. made
C. to make
D. to have made
6. I want ____ America.
A. visit
B. to visit
C. visiting
D. visited
7. Mary finished ____ the book.
A. read
B. to read
C. reading
D. to have read

8. After reading the letter, he went on ____ a reply.
A. to write
B. write
C. writing
D. written
9. You oughtn't to go on ____ this way.
A. to live
B. live
C. living
D. lived
10. My wife is proud of ____ a novelist.
A. me be
B. my being
C. me to be
D. I being
11. I don't feel like ____ to the concert.
A. going
B. to go
C. to have gone
D. gone
12. On ____ the room, she began to cry.
A. enter
B. entered
C. to enter
D. entering
13. ____ here will get us out of trouble.
A. His coming
B. Coming
C. He coming
D. Him coming
14. Do you mind ____ ?
A. me smoking
B. I smoking
C. to smoke
D. my being smoked
15. Nathan Hale refused ____ for the enemy.
A. working
B. worked
C. to work
D. to be working

二. 选择填空 (历届高考题)

1. Our monitor suggested ____ a discussion of this subject. (85)
A. to have
B. should have

- C . have
D . having
- 2 . We think the film is ____ (85)
A . worth to see
B . worthy of seeing
C . worth seeing
D . worthy to see
- 3 . ---- ____ Let's have a break.
----Not now. I don't want to stop ____ yet. (85)
A . study
B . to study
C . for studying
D . studying
- 4 . ----What are you going to do this afternoon?
----I'm thinking of ____ to visit my aunt. (85)
A . go
B . going
C . having gone
D . my going
- 5 . ----You should say sorry to your brother. (88)
----Yes, I regret ____ with him.
A . quarrelling
B . quarrelled
C . to quarrel
D . to have quarrelled
- 6 . Only one of these books is ____ . (86)
A . worth to read
B . worth being read
C . worth of reading
D . worth reading
- 7 . I can't imagine ____ that with them. (86)
A . do
B . to do
C . being done
D . doing
- 8 . The squirrel was lucky that it just missed ____ . (87)
A . catching
B . to be caught
C . being caught
D . to catch
- 9 . I believe that's the best way to prevent such a thing ____
again. (87)
A . to happen
B . from happening

- C . happened
D . happen
- 10 . She didn't remember ____ him before.(88)
A . having met
B . have met
C . to meet
D . to having met
- 11 . The sick woman needs ____.(88)
A . looking after
B . to be looking after
C . to look after
D . being looked after
- 12 . ---What do you think of the book?
---Oh, excellent, It's worth ____ a second time.(89)
A . to read
B . to be read
C . reading
D . being read
- 13 . Go on ____ the other exercise after you have finished this one.(89)
A . to do
B . doing
C . with
D . to be doing
- 14 . She reached the top of the hill and stopped ____ on a big rock by the side of the path.(90)
A . to have rested
B . resting
C . to rest
D . rest
- 15 . I can hardly imagine Peter ____ across the Atlantic Ocean in five days.(91)
A . sail
B . to sail
C . sailing
D . to have sailed
- 16 . ---The light in the office is still on.
----Oh, I forgot ____.(91)
A . turning it off
B . turn it off
C . to turn it off
D . having turned it off
- 17 . ----I usually go there by train.
----Why not ____ by boat for a change?(92)

- A . to try going
 B . trying to go
 C . to try and go
 D . try going
- 18 . Please remember ____ the radio before leaving.
 A . turning off
 B . turn off
 C . to turn off
 D . turned off
- 19 . They now regret ____ married so soon.(92)
 A . get
 B . getting
 C . to have got
 D . to get
- 20 . I would appreciate ____ back this afternoon.(92)
 A . you to call
 B . you call
 C . your calling
 D . you're calling
- 21 . We offered him our congratulations ____ his passing the college exams.(93)
 A . at
 B . of
 C . for
 D . on
- 22 . ----I must apologize for ____ ahead of time.
 ----That's all right.(94)
 A . letting you not know
 B . not letting you know
 C . letting you know not
 D . letting not you know
- 23 . ----You were brave enough to raise objections at the meeting.
 ----Well, now I regret ____ that.(95)
 A . to do
 B . to be doing
 C . to have done
 D . having done

— .

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 . A | 2 . B | 3 . B | 4 . A |
| 5 . A | 6 . B | 7 . C | 8 . A |
| 9 . C | 10 . B | 11 . A | 12 . D |
| 13 . A | 14 . A | 15 . C | |

— .

1 . D	2 . C	3 . D	4 . B
5 . A	6 . D	7 . D	8 . C
9 . B	10 . A	11 . A	12 . C
13 . A	14 . C	15 . C	16 . C
17 . D	18 . C	19 . B	20 . C
21 . D	22 . B	23 . D	

第 5 章 分词

第 5 章	分词
1. 现在分词和过去分词的区别	128
2. 分词的用法	130
3. 独立主格	151

分词也是非谓语动词之一。

分词在形式上不同于不定式和动名词，它有两种形式：

现在分词：动词原形 + ing (同动名词形式)

过去分词：(规则动词) 动词原形 + ed

(不规则动词) 构成没有什么规律

分词也和不定式和动名词一样，在句子中不能作谓语，但它还保留一部分动词性质，它可以带自己的状语和宾语，有时也有它自己单独的逻辑上的主语。

例：(1) He saw the thief **stealing** the books from the book shop. (带状语)

他看见这个贼正在书店偷书。

(2) **Hearing** the news he jumped. (带宾语)

听到这个消息，他跳了起来。

(3) Li Ming **being late**, we had to wait. (带逻辑主语)

李明迟到了，我们只好等他。

另外，分词具有形容词和副词性质，它可以在句子中担任表语、定语、状语和宾补。

作表语

The story is **interesting**. I'm **interested** in it.

这个故事很有趣，我对它感兴趣。

作定语

This is a **moving** film.

这是一部感人的电影。

The woman **dressed** in blue is my sister.

穿着蓝衣服的妇女是我姐姐。

作状语

The secretary worked late into the night, **preparing a long speech** for the president.

秘书工作到深夜，为总统准备一篇长的发言稿。

Given more attention, the trees could have grown better.

如果再多注意，这些树会长得更好。

作宾补

When he passed the bank, he saw the thief **stealing** some money from the bank.

当他经过银行时看见这个贼正在偷钱。

When he was decorating his house, he got (had) the bedroom **painted** first.

他装饰他的房子时，他首先把卧室刷白。

分词的形式 (及物动词的分词有七种形式, 不及物动词的分词有四种形式)				
动词类别	及物动词 (do)		不及物动词 (fall)	
语态	主动	被动	主动	被动
一般式	doing	being done done ²	falling fallen ²	无
完成式	having done	having been done	having fallen	无
完成进行式 1	having been doing	having been being done (基本不用)	having been falling	无

注: 1. 以上几种形式中完成进行式不常用。 2. fallen 是不及物动词 fall 的过去分词, 表示主动, 而 done 是及物动词 do 的过去分词, 表被动 (除了这两个是过去分词外, 以上其余皆是现在分词。)

分词的否定式: not+分词

例: **Not knowing** anything about the accident, he went to work as usual.

关于这一事故, 他什么也不知道, 所以他还像平常一样去上班了。

Not having received a reply, he decided to write again.

因为他没有收到回信, 他决定再写。

1 现在分词和过去分词的区别

它们的主要区别表现在语态和时态上。

1 从语态上来区别

1. 在语态上现在分词无论是及物动词或不及物动词, 一般都表示主动的意思。

Do you know the woman **talking** to Tom?

=Do you know the woman **who is talking to Tom?**

└── 定语从句 (主动语态)

你认识那位正在和汤姆说话的那位妇女吗?

Entering the city, they saw a lot of soldiers marching.

=**When they entered the city**, they saw a lot of soldiers

└── 状语从句 (主动语态)

marching.

进入城市后, 他们看见许多士兵们在行进。

2. 及物动词的过去分词一般表示被动。

The soldier **wounded** in the war has become a doctor.

=The soldier who was wounded in the war has become a doctor.

在战争中受伤的那位士兵现在已经成为一名医生了。

Seen from the top of the hill, the city is more beautiful.

=If it is seen from the top of the hill, the city is more beautiful.

如果从山顶上看这座城市更加美丽。

例外

I can not find the **missing (lost)** watch.

=I can not find the watch which is missed.

=I can't find the watch that is lost.

我找不到丢失了的手表。

注意

请注意 missing 的用法。be missing=be lost

2 从时态上来区别

及物动词： { 现在分词：表正在进行的动作。
过去分词：表示已经完成的动作。

不及物动词： { 现在分词：表进行的意思。
过去分词：表示完成的意思，而非表被动

China is a developing country and America is a developed country.

(vi)现在分词表正在进行 (vi)过去分词表示完成

=China is a country that is developing and America is a country that has developed.

中国是一个发展中国家，而美国是一个发达国家。

Look. The falling leaves are all yellow. Lots of fallen

(vi)现在分词表正在进行 (vi)过去分词表示完成

leaves make the road yellow.

必背！

developed countries

发达国家

underdeveloped

countries 不发达国家

developing countries

发展中国家

=Look. The leaves that are falling are all yellow. Lots of the leaves that have fallen make the road yellow.

看，这些落叶（正在下落）使得马路变黄了。

At the party I met my schoolmate just returned from Africa.

(vi)过去分词表示完成

=At the party I met my schoolmate who has just returned from Africa.

在聚会上我遇见了刚刚从非洲回来的我的一位校友。

注意

不及物动词的现在分词和过去分词有进行、完成之分。

boiling water 正在沸腾的开水

boiled water 煮开过的水（可能是烫的或冷的）

a drowning man 快淹死的人

a drowned man 已淹死的人

falling leaves 正在飘落的树叶

fallen leaves 已落在地上的树叶

2 分词的用法

1 分词作表语

1. 跟在系动词之后

分词作表语，一般跟在 be, get, become, look, sound, feel, keep, remain, grow, seem, appear 等系动词后面。

现在分词作表语：一般表主动或主语的性质和特征。

含有“令人……”的意思。

主语多数情况下是物。

过去分词作表语：一般表被动或主语所处的状态。

含有“感到……”的意思。

主语多数情况下是人。

而作表语用的分词，许多是由能够表示人们某种感情或情绪的动词变化而来的。常见的原以下：

现在分词：moving, interesting, encouraging, exciting, inspiring, boring, surprising, puzzling, amusing, astonishing, missing, promising

过去分词：interested, moved, discouraged, amused, astonished, frightened, excited, inspired, pleased, satisfied, tired, worried, completed, delighted, hurt, married, crowded.

The news sounds **encouraging**.

这个消息听起来令人鼓舞。

How did the audience receive the new play?

观众对这个新剧反映如何？

They got very **excited**.

他们非常激动。

How did Bob do in the exams this time?

这次鲍伯考得怎么样？

Well, his father seems **pleased** with his results.

不错，他父亲似乎对于他的成绩感到高兴。

2. 作表语的过去分词与被动语态中的过去分词的区别

这两种不同语法功能的句子在形式上是一样的，都是由“系动词 be+过去分词”构成的，有时容易混淆。区别如下：

a. 被动语态表示主语的动作。

而作表语的分词表示主语所处的状态。

The blackboard **was broken (has been broken)** by LiMing. (被动语态，表示动作)

这块黑板是李明打碎的。

The blackboard is **broken**.

(系表结构，表示主语 the blackboard 所处的状态 broken)

这块黑板碎了。

b. 从时态上来区分

系表结构：只用于一般现在时、一般过去时、现在完成时和过去完成时。

被动语态：除了不能用于完成进行时和将来进行时外，可用于其它时态。（详见第2章被动语态）

c. 从时态的一致性来区分

被动语态 的时态要与相应的主动语态一致。

系表结构 不需要一致。

The blackboard, was broken by Li Ming. (**被动语态**)

Li Ming broke the blackboard. (**主动语态**)

The blackboard is broken. (**系表结构**)

（表示状态则可用现在时，表示目前的状态，不必考虑其时态要与相应的主动语态一致。我们可理解为这块黑板以前（或已经）被李明打碎，现在它是碎的。

必背！

不是所有动词的过去分词都可以作表语，表示主语所处的状态的，只有那些形容词特征显著的过去分词才能作表语。常见的有：

amused 觉得有趣	injured 受伤的
covered 盖着的	known 有名的
dressed 穿着	lost 失去的
broken 破的	gone
burnt 燃烧	delighted
shut 关着的	excited 兴奋的
painted	pleased
crowded 拥挤的	satisfied 满足的
wounded 受伤的	married 已结婚
drunk	worried 担心
billed	surprised 惊讶
finished 完成的	interested 有趣的
done	

必背！

请记住这一句话！

Keep your eyes open, keep your mouth closed.

多观察（用眼），少说话（用嘴）。

注意

有相应的形容词能说明状态时，则有用分词，而用形容词。

The window is open. The door is locked. (0)

The window is **opened**. The door is locked (**x**)

窗户是开着的，门是锁着的。

（open 可兼作动词与形容词，都当开、开着的讲，所以只能用它的形容词，而不能用它的分词。而锁着的 lock 不能作形容词，所以只能用它的过去分词）

d. be+不及物动词的过去分词，一般是系表结构，而不是被动语态。

常用来作表语的不及物动词有：

gone 过去了、消失了	come 来了
fallen 落下的	known 著名的
arrived 到了	educated 受过教育

risen 升起来了 learned 有学问的
returned 回来了 excited 兴奋
retired 退休了 astonished 感到吃惊
mistaken 误解、弄错 interested 有兴趣

My watch is **gone**.

我的手表没有了。

It's not my fault. You are **mistaken**.

这不是我的过错，你误会了。

3. 作表语的现在分词和进行时态的现在分词的区别

作表语的现在分词表示主语的特征和性质。

进行时态中的分词表示主语正在进行的动作。

比较

The situation in our country is **encouraging**. (系表结构)

我国的形势鼓舞人心。

The situation in our country is **encouraging** the people.

(**现在进行时**)

我国的形势正鼓舞着人民。

另外，在分词作表语的结构中，可以用其它系动词来代替 be，但在进行结构中，则不可以。因为进行的句型必须是 be+doing。

The news is surprising.

这个消息很惊人。

=The news sounds surprising.

这个消息听起来挺惊人的。

4. 分词、动名词和不定式作表语时的区别

分词作表语：主要是表示主语的特点和所处的状态。

主语和表语的位置不可以互换。

动名词和不定式作表语：主要是表示主语的具体内容。

主语和表语的位置常常可以互换。

比较

The film is **disappointing**.

这部电影真令人失望。

(现在分词作表语，表示主语 the film 的性质、特点，不能和主语互换。)

We are **disappointed** with the film.

我们对这个电影感到失望。

(过去分词作表语，表示主语 we 所处的状态，表语不能和主语互换。)

My job is **teaching** English.

我的工作就是教英语。

=Teaching English is my job.

教英语是我的工作

(动名词作表语，表示主语的内容“我的工作是什么”，表语和主语位置可以互换。)

Our aim is **to enter** the Universities.

我们的目标是考上大学

=To enter the Universities is our aim.

考上大学是我们的目标。

(不定式作表语，表示主语的内容：“我们的目标是什么？”，表语和主语位置可以互换。)

2 分词作定语

1. 分词作定语时的位置

a. 单个分词作定语时，一般在它所修饰的名词之前，但有时为了强调动作，也可放在它所修饰的名词后面。

The **swimming** boy is my brother. (现在分词+名词)

那个游泳的小男孩是我弟弟。

Look at the **broken** glasses. (过去分词+名词)

看那些破碎了的玻璃杯。

What is the language **spoken** in Japan? (名词+过去分词)

在日本说什么语言？

注意

一般来讲，和分词作表语时一样，及物动词的现在分词修饰事物，过去分词修饰人。

When they heard the **exciting** news, they got **excited**. Then the **excited** people shouted and cheered.

当他们听到这一激动人心的消息时，他们变得激动起来。然后这些激动的人们大声叫喊、欢呼。

tiring music 烦人的音乐

a **tired** man 疲倦的人

a **surprising** result 一个惊人的结果

surprised girls 惊人的姑娘们

b. 如果分词修饰由 some/any/no+thing/body/one 所形成的不定代词或指示代词 those 时，分词在这些被修饰的词的后面。

Anyone **swimming** will be punished.

正在游泳的任何人都将受到惩罚。

c. 分词短语作定语时，在被修饰的名词之后。

I have a radio **made in China**.

我有一台中国生产的收音机。

The girl **dressed in white** is Mary.

穿白衣服的小姑娘是玛丽。

2. 分词短语作定语时与谓语动词的时间关系

分词短语作定语时，要注意分词所表示的动作与谓语动词所表示的动作之间的时间关系。

分词作定语时，现在分词有进行意味和主动意味，过去分词有完成意味和被动意味。因此，一般来讲，用现在分词时，要符合以下两个条件之一：

a. 分词所表示的动作与谓语所表示的动作同时发生。

The road **joining the two villages** is very wide.

=The road that joins the two villages is very wide.

连接这两个村子的路非常宽。

They lived in a room **facing the north** thirty years ago.

=They lived in a room which faced the north thirty years ago.

三十年前，他们住在朝北的房间里。

b. 分词所表示的是现在正发生的动作。

The man **running over there** is our chairman.

=The man who is running over there is our chairman.

正在朝那边跑的那个人是主席。

I know the young man **sleeping on the bench**.

=I know the young man who is sleeping on the bench.

我认识正在长凳上睡觉的那位年轻人。

如果分词需要表示动作是主动的，而又在谓语动作之前发生，则要用定语从句表示，在谓语动作之后发生则要用不定式或从句表示。

The man who came yesterday **comes** again.

The man coming yesterday comes again. (×)

昨天来过的那个人又来了。

(在谓语动词 **comes** 之前发生)

The students to attend the meeting (who will attend the meeting) will arrive heretomorrow.

要参加会议的学生们明天到达这里。

(动作在谓语动词 **will arrive** 之后发生)

3. 何时用现在分词的被动语态形式

a. 如果一个及物动词作定语，既要表达进行意味，又要表达被动意味时，用此形式。

The question **being discussed** is very important.

=The question that is being discussed is very important.

正在(被)讨论问题十分重要。

The skyscraper **being built** is still higher than that built the year before last.

=The skyscraper that is being built is still higher than that(one) that was built the year before last.

正在建造的那幢摩天大楼比前年造的那幢还要高。

Do you know the boy **being punished** by our teacher?

=Do you know the boy who is being punished by our teacher?

你认识正在被我们老师处罚的那个男孩吗?

b. 如果指的是将来的动作就要用不定式的被动形式(或定语从句)来表示。

You are welcome to a party to be given in our class at 7 30pm, Dec. 25.

欢迎您参加 12 月 25 日晚上 7 30 在我班如开的晚会。

Those who have handed in their compositions may go home.

定语从句

Those having handed in their compositions may go home.(×)
谁交了作文就可以回家了。

注意

完成形式一般不用于作定语。

4. 何时用过去分词作定语？

因为过去分词只有一种形式，而它又包含完成和被动意味。因此要符合下列条件：

a. 过去分词表示的动作是在谓语动词所表示的动作之前发生。

This is a picture **painted by my father.**

=This is a picture that was painted by my father.

这是一张我父亲画的画。

(分词 painted 所表示的动作发生在谓语动词 is 之前)

The letter **mailed last night** will reach him tomorrow.

=The letter that was mailed last night will reach him tomorrow.

昨日寄出那封信，明天将会寄达他手中。

b. 分词表示的动作是有一定时间性的。

Goods **imported from abroad** are not always better than those made in China.

进口的高品并不一定比国产的好。

Is it a letter **written in pencil**?

这是用铅笔定的信吗？

注意

分词短语作定语时，和定语从句一样，也有限定性和非限定性两种。限定性分词短语前后没有逗号，非限定性分词短语有逗号，有时两种形式句子有很大的区别。

His brother **working as a teacher** lives in Tianjing.

=His brother who works as a teacher lives in Tianjing.

他当老师的哥哥住在天津。(他不止一个兄弟)

His brother, **working as a teacher**, lives in Tianjing.

他的哥哥是个老师，住在天津。(他只有一个哥哥)

5. 分词、动名词、不定式作定语时的区别

	形式	位置	重读	内容	时间
分词	单个分词及分词短语均可。 (起形容词作用)	放在所修饰词的前后均可。	分词及所修饰的词都重读。	分词定语和所修饰的词有逻辑上的主谓关系, 相当于一定语从句, 分词说明所修饰的词、所代表的人或物所做的动作或特征。	主动语态的分词一般表示与谓语动作同时发生的动作。被动语态的分词表示在谓语动词之前发生的动作。
动名词	只以单词的形式出现(起名词作用)	只能放在它所修饰的词的前面	只有动名词重读	动名词定语一般表示所修饰词的用途。它和所修饰词之间没有逻辑上的主谓关系。	
不定式	单个不定式和不定式短语均可。	放在所修饰词的后边。		不定式定语和它所修饰的词一般有逻辑的动宾关系和主谓关系, 不定式表示的动作性强。	不定式的一般时态和进行时态表示在谓语动词之后或同时发生的动作。完成时态可表示在谓语动词之前发生的动作。

Look at the **sleeping boy**. (分词作定语)

逻辑上的主语

(sleeping boy=the boy is sleeping)

=Look at the boy who is sleeping. (定语从句)

看这个熟睡的男孩。

说明

分词作定语时：

sleeping boy

两词皆要重读

可换成定语从句

两词有逻辑上的主谓关系

(sleeping 是主动语态的现在分词, 在时间上, 它表示 sleep 这一动作与谓语动词 look 的动作同时发生。看的 同时 这个男孩在睡觉。)

Please go to the **sleeping car**. (动名词作定语)

说明用途(the car is for sleep)

请到卧铺车厢。

说明

动名词作定语

sleeping car

只有 sleeping 重读

不能变为定语从句

两词没有逻辑上的主谓关系

定语

I have a lot of **words to say**. (不定式作定语)

两者存在着逻辑上的动宾关系
(say words 说一些话)

我有许多话要说。

(to say 是不定式的一般式，表示的动作和谓语动作同时发生)

说明

不定式作定语

words to say

to say 只能放在

words 后面

两者有逻辑上的动宾关系

3 分词作宾语补足语

主语 谓语 宾语 宾语补足语(宾补)

I heard a bell ringing some where.

我听见铃铛在什么地方响。

I had(got) a decayed tooth pulled off.

我让(大夫)把我的一颗蛀牙拔了。

宾语补足语，又简称为宾补，是在宾语后面，补充说明宾语的意义成分，与宾语有逻辑上的主谓关系。分词可以作宾补，但它通常用在一些感觉动词和使役动词的宾语后面，强调它的动作性，因此译文时，一般把分词译成动词。

常用的动词有：

感觉动词：hear, see, notice, watch, feel, find, leave...

使役动词：make, let, have, get, keep

1. 现在分词和过去分词作宾补的区别

现在分词与句子的宾语是主动关系，它表示动作的进行。

过去分词与句子的宾语是被动关系，它表示动作的完成和结果。

比较

I heard someone calling me.

主谓 宾 宾补

我听见有人在叫我。

(在此句中宾语和宾补的关系是主动的，它表示 call 的动作正在进行。someone calling me=Someone was calling me.如果译换成句子，是个主动句，是进行时)

I heard my name called.

主谓 宾 宾补

我听见我的名字被叫。

(此句中，宾语和宾补的关系是被动的，它表示 call 这一动作已经完成。my name called=My name was called.转换成的句子是个被动句，是过去时，表示这一动作已经结束)

比较

We found the snake eating the eggs.

=the snake was eating the eggs.

我们发现蛇正在吃鸡蛋。

We found the eggs eaten by the snake.

=the eggs were eaten by the snake.

我们发现鸡蛋被蛇吃了。

a. 过去分词在动词 have, get 两词后面作宾补时, 常常表示这个动作不是由主语完成的, 而是由别人完成的, 还有一种情况就是表示这是主语的一种经历, 请根据上下文来领会句子的意义。

You'd better have (get) the dangerous **building pulled down**.
你最好叫人把这座危楼推倒了。

How often do you have (get) your hair **cut**?
你每隔多久理一次发? (不是自己理的)

He had some pictures **taken** in the park.
他在公园照了几张相片。(别人给他照的)

I had my left arm **broken** yesterday.
昨天我的左胳膊摔断了。(只是一种经历)

Li Ming had his bike **stolen**.
李明的自行车被偷了。

(是主语的一种遭遇、经历, 不可能是主语叫别人做的事)

比较

He took some pictures in the park.
他给别人照的或是他照的风景照片。(总之是他自己动手照的)

b. 重要词组: **make oneself done**

make oneself understood

=to make one's meaning clear to others 使别人听懂自己讲的话

make oneself heard 使别人能听得见自己的话

I can't **make myself understood** because of my broken English.
因为我糟糕的英语, 我不能用英语表达我的意思。

(我的英语不能使别人明白我的意思)

I didn't **make myself heard** because a lot of people cried in the hall.

因为大厅中有许多人大声喊叫, 我讲话别人听不见。

A liar cannot **make himself believed**.

撒谎者的话别人是不会相信的。

2. 现在分词、过去分词和不定式作宾补的区别

	形式	语态	内容	被动语态
不定式	不带 to	与宾语是	动作发生了	to 要还原
	动词原形	主动关系	全过程已结束	
现在分词	V. +ing	与宾语是	动作正在进行	没变化
		主动关系	还没有结束	
过去分词	V. +ed	与宾语是	动作已经完成	没变化
		被动关系		

Do you hear someone **calling** you? (现在分词)
表动作正在进行, 是主动句 ↗

(=Someone is calling you, do you hear?)

Yes, I did. I heard him **call** me several times. (不定式)
↘ 表动作已结束, 是主动句

两者是被动关系，且动作已结束 ↴

Oh, you mean you hear your name **called** several times.

(过去分词)

(=Your name was called several times, do you hear?)

——你听见有人叫你吗？

——是的，我听见他叫了我几次了。

——哦，你的意思是他已经叫了你几次了。(你的名字 已经被叫了好几次了。)

注意

如果宾语补足语的动作既可表示进行状态，也可以表示全过程，则用不定式或分词，两者区别不大。

I like to watch the birds **land (landing)** or fly (flying). 我喜欢观察鸟的落下和飞走。

When he was decorating his house, he got

the bedroom painted first. (过去分词作宾补)

↑ 表示动作已结束，被动关系

(=the bedroom was painted first)

当他装修他的房子时，他首先把卧室粉刷了。

When he was decorating his house, he had some workers

paint his bedroom first. (不定式作宾补)

↑ 表动作已结束，主动关系

当他装修他的房子时，他首先让工人们把卧室粉刷一新。

表动作正在进行，主动关系 ↴

In order to finish it, he had the workers **painting** his

bedroom all the day and night.

为了完成它，他让工人们从早一直干到晚。

a. 由省去 to 的不定式构成的复合宾语在变为被动语态时，要把原来省去的小品词 to 还原。但 let 这个词例外，被动语态时，to 可还原，也可省略。

I watched the boy **cross** the street.

The boy was watched **to cross** the street.

我观察这个小孩过马路。

The teacher let the students **write** the composition at class.

The students were let **(to) write** the composition at class.

老师让学生们课上定作文。

b. have...do 这一句不可以变为被动式，而 make...do 和 let...do 则可以。

The boss had Tom clean the room.

Tom was had to clean the room. (×)

Tom was made to clean the room. (0)

老板让汤姆打扫房间。

c. find 的用法 (0) find+ 宾语 +doing (宾补)

(0) find+宾语+done (宾补)

(×) find+宾语+不定式

He found a wallet **lying** on the ground. (现在分词)

他发现地上有一个钱包。

He found the city **changed** a lot. (过去分词)

He found them change the city.(×)

他发现这个城市变化很大。

d. seat 和 sit 的用法

Please be seated.

=Please sit down.

请坐下。

What surprised me most was to see some of the village people **seated (sitting)** on the benches at the end of the room.

最使我惊奇的是看见村民们坐在房后的长凳上。

(此句中的 seated 不能写成 seating, 但可以写成 sitting)

e. 如果有一系列动作作宾补时, 一般用不定式, 而不用现在分词。

I saw her **enter** the room, **sit** in a chair, **open** a book and **begin** to read.

我看见她走进房间, 坐在一把椅子上打开一本书开始读起来了。

4 分词作状语

分词状语 修饰谓语 修饰句子

句型: 分词 / 分词短语, 主语+谓语动词+~

表动作发生的时间、原因、条件、结果、让步或伴随情况

分词和分词短语可以在句子中作状语来修饰谓语动词 或整个句子, 表示动作发生的时间、原因、条件、结果、让步或伴随等性况。但分词状语一般表示一个次要 的动作。分词作状语时, 一般都可以变为相应的状语从句或并列句。

注意

现在分词的完成式这一形式主要在分词作状语时使用, 它一般 不能用于定语。表示动作在谓语动词所表示的动作之前已经发生。

1. 分词作时间状语

分词短语作时间状语时, 相当于一个时间状语从句, 几乎每个分词短语作时间状语时, 都可以转变为一个时间状语从句。分词的完成形式在作状语时常常出现。请特别注意分词所表示的动作和谓语动词所表示的动作的时间关系, 还要注意一下分词短语的位置。

a. 分词所表示的动作一发生, 谓语动词表示的动作立即发生, 可以用分词短语作状语。

分词位置: 放在前面。

可以译为: “当……的时候”

可以换成: on+动名词结构。

常用的动词多是表示一个极短暂动作的动词, 如 hear, see, return, look, open, close, arrive, leave

分词短语

Hearing the bad news, they couldn't help crying.

=状语从句：

When they heard the bad news they couldn't help crying.

=on+动名词：

On hearing the bad news, they couldn't help crying.

当听到这个不幸的消息时，他们情不自禁地哭了起来。

b. 分词所表示的动作在进行过程中，谓语动作发生了，此时可以用分词短语作状语，但一般在它的前面加上 when 或 while

分词位置：前后都可以。

可以译为：“当……时”

注意

在左述情况中只用 when, while 这两个词，since, as 不可以分词短语作状语

While playing the piano, she got very excited.

=状语从句：

While she was playing the piano, she got very excited.

当她弹钢琴时（过程中）她变得十分激动。

Be careful when crossing the street.

=Be careful when you are crossing the street.

过马路时要小心。

c. 分词所表示的动作完成了之后，谓语动词所表示的动作才发生，用分词的完成形式作状语。

分词位置：放在句子前面。

可以译为：“在……之后”。

可以换成：after+动名词这一结构。

Having turned off the radio, he began to go over his lessons.

=状语从句：

After he had turned off the radio, he began to go over his lessons.

=after+动名词结构的句子：

After turning off the radio, he began to go over his lessons.

关上收音机之后，他开始温习功课。

Having received his letter, I decided to write back.

=状语从句：

After I had received his letter, I decided to write back.

=after+动名词结构的句子：

After receiving his letter, I decided to write back.

收到他的信后，我决定给他回信。

2. 分词作原因状语

分词短语作原因状语时，相当于一个原因状语从句，同时也可以转变为一个原因状语从句，分词的完成形式也经常用来作原因状语。

和时间状语一样，也要注意分词所表示的动作及谓语动词所表示的动作的时间关系。

a. 分词所表示的动作和谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生或几乎同时

发生时，用分词的一般形式。

Not recognizing the voice, he refused to give the person his address. (两个动作同时发生)

因为他没听出这个人的声音，他没把他自己的地址给他。

Forgetting his manners, he put his feet up on the desk.

=原因状语从句：

As he forgot his manners, he put his feet on the desk.

忘掉了他的举止(要文明了)他把脚放在书桌上。

Being so angry, he couldn't go to sleep.

=原因状语从句：

Because he was so angry, he couldn't go to sleep.

因为太生气了，他不能入睡。

b. 分词所表示的动作在谓语动词所表示的动作之前发生，用分词的完成式。

Having been to the Great Wall many times, he didn't go (there) last week.

=原因状语从句：

Because (As) he had been to the Great Wall many times, he didn't go last week.

因为他已经去过长城许多次了，上周他就没去。

Not having received his father's letter, he decided to make a call to him.

=原因状语从句：

Because he hadn't received his father's letter, he decided to make a call to him.

注意

如果分词是含有心理活动意义的，一般是表示原因的，如 knowing, thinking, forgetting, learning...

因为他没收到他父亲的信，他决定打个电话给他父亲。

3. 分词作条件状语

分词短语有时表示一种假设情况，相当开一个条件从句，这种情况下，有时在分词短语前加上 of, unless 使条件更明确。

Given more attention, the trees could have grown better.

=条件句：

If they had been given more attention, the trees could have grown better.

(=If given more attention, the trees could have grown better.)

如果对这些树再多注意些，它们可能长得更好。

4. 分词作让步状语

分词短语作让步状语时，相当于一个让步状语从句，有时分词前可带有连词 although, whether, even if, even though.

Although working from morning till night his father didn't get enough food.

=从句：

Although his father worked from morning till night he didn't get enough food.

虽然他父亲从早到晚的拚命干，但是他还是挣不够吃的。

5. 表示方式或伴随情况

分词短语表示方式或伴随情况是比较常用的，它用来说明动作发生的背景或情况。一般情况下，分词所表示的动作和谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生。它没有相应的状语从句可转换，但可以用并列句来转换。

They came into the classroom, **singing and laughing**

=并列句：

They sang and laughed; they came into the classroom.

他们又唱又笑地走进教室

The hero sat there, **surrounded by a lot of students**

=并列句：

注意

主要动作用谓语动词来表示，分词则表示次要动作。

例如：在左例中，came 进来是主要动作，singing, laughing 是次要动作，是伴随着 came 这一动作而有的。所以这句不能写为 They sang and laughed, coming into the classroom. (×)

The hero sat there and he was surrounded by a lot of students.

英雄坐在那儿，许多学生围着他。

注意

在分词表示方式或伴随情况时，分词短语一般表示的是次要的动作，是用来说明主要动作的，即说明谓语动词的动作的。

6. 分词作结果状语

分词短语作结果状语时，不常用，通常放在句末，中间有逗号，有时为了突出结果，分词前带有 thus.

The bus was held up by the snowstorm, **thus causing the delay.**

=结果状语从句

The bus was held up by the snowstorm, so it caused the delay.

公共汽车被大风雪所阻，因而耽搁了。

7. 分词作状语和不定式作状语的区别

分词和不定式虽然都可以当状语，但区别比较大。

不定式作状语：主要是作目的状语和结果状语，还有一些作原因状语（见下面区别）。

分词作状语：一般表示时间、原因、条件、让步、方式、伴随等情况。（很少用作目的和结果状语）。

下面我们看看表示原因的分词状语和不定式状语的区别：

a. 表原因的不定式

主要是修饰一些含有感情色彩的表语形容词和不及物动词，位置一般在这些被修饰的后面。

I'm sorry **to hear that.**

我听到这些，非常遗憾。

They rejoiced **to get there first.**

他们第一个到达非常高兴。

b. 表原因的分词短语

表示原因的分词短语用得很多，动词没有太多的限制，它的位置也灵活，在句子的任何部位都可以，而且要带有逗号。

说明

只要分辨出是担当什么状语，就较容易正确使用分词或不定式了。例句详见第3章动词不定式（P. 78）和本章分词用法中分词作状语部分（P. 144）

The doctor, **not wishing to make her nervous**, didn't fully explain the seriousness of her condition.

医生为了不使她紧张，没有完全向她讲明病情的严重性。

8. 分词作状语时需注意事项

a. 分词短语作状语时，它的逻辑主语通常应是句子的主语。这一点需要特别注意。

从山顶上看，这座城市非常美丽。

带状语从句的句子（可以表示不同的主语）

If **you** see from the hill, **the city** is beautiful.

（如果你从山顶上看，……）

When **you** see from the hill, **the city** is beautiful.

（当你从山顶上看时，……）

分词作状语的句子（状语逻辑上主语与句子主语须一致）

· 句子的主语是 **the city** ·

Seen from the hill, the city is beautiful.

· 句子的主语是 **you** ·

Seeing from the hill, **you** can see the whole city... (0)

Seeing from the hill, **the city** is beautiful... (x)

（现在分语 seeing 的逻辑主语是 you，所以句子的主语应用 you，而不是 the city）

比较

相对应的带状语从句的句子是 If (when) it (the city) is seen from the hill, the city is beautiful.

把水加热到 100 度，水就沸腾了。

带状语从句的句子：

If (When) **it** is heated to 100 , **water** will boils.

（从句与主句的主语一致）

If (When) **we** heat it to 100 , **water** will boils. （从句与主句的主语不同）

分词作状语的句子：

Heated to 100 water will boils. (0)

Heated to 100 water boils. （自然现象）(0)

Heating to 100 ℃ water boils. (x)

↑ 逻辑上的主语应该是 we，而非 water

例外

被用作介词或连词的分词（ ）

supposing 假设、假如、设想 according to 按照
considering 认为 granted 认为
including 包括

Supposing he won't pass the exam, what should he do?
假设他通不过，他该怎么办？

Many people **including** the old go to work without any pay on Saturday.

许多人包括老人们都参加了星期六义务劳动。

According to his report, the situation is getting serious.
根据他的报告，形势变得严峻了。

b. 分词短语的位置

一般来说如果分词表示的动作和谓语动词表示的动作同时发生或在谓语动词表示的动作之前发生，则分词短语放在句首。

如果分词所表示的动作发生在谓语动词所表示的动作之后，则分词短语放在句尾。

比较

Finding the door locked, Tom went home.

(原因、时间)

看到门锁着，汤姆就回家去了。

Tom went home, **finding the door locked**. (结果)

汤回到家发现门锁着。

Not knowing her address, I can't write to her. (原因)

因为不知道她的地址，没法给她写信。

The woman died in 1967, **leaving his sons** a lot of money.

(结果)

这位老妇人 1967 年去世，给她的儿子们留下了大笔钱。

Greatly moved by the hero, she decided to study harder.

(原因)

被英雄人物所深深地感动，她决心好好学习。

说明

一般来讲，时间、原因、条件、让步等分词短语多放在句首而结果、伴随的分词短语多放在句尾。

3 独立主格

我们在前面讲到分词短语作状语时，它的逻辑主语应该是句子的主语。但有时分词短语带有自己的主语。（它们之间存在着逻辑上的主谓关系），这个逻辑上的主语一般是由名词担任，在分词短语之前，我们称这为独立主格。

独立主格在句子中作状语，可以表示时间、原因、条件和方式、伴随。

今天是星期天，你不必去上学。

原因从句：

Because it is Sunday, you needn't go to school.

主语 主语

分词表示：

It being Sunday, you needn't go to school. (○)

↑ 分词逻辑上的主语

(It being Sunday 构成独立主格结构在句子中作原因状语)

Being Sunday, you needn't go to school. (×)

(因分词的逻辑主语不是句子的主语，所以句子错误。)

官员们都到齐了，宣布开会。

分词表示：

All the officials having arrived, the meeting was declared open.

↑ 分词逻辑上的主语

时间状语从句：

After (when) all the officials had arrived, the meeting was declared open.

天气允许的话，我们去颐和园。

分词表示：

Weather permitting, We'll go to the Summer Palace.

→ 分词逻辑上的主语

条件状语从句：

If weather permits, we'll go to the Summer Palace.

All the work done, you can have a rest.

↑ 分词逻辑上的主语

=All the work is done and you can have a rest.

所有的工作都完成了，你们可以休息了。

注意

分词做独立主格有时前面可以加 with 或 without

The park is beautiful with all the trees putting on a tender green. 树叶都绿了，使得公园很漂亮。

实力测验

一. 汉译英

1. 我要点开水泡茶。
2. 不要喝河里的水，可以喝凉开水（冷开水）。
3. 即将生产的那种彩电并不比进口的差。
4. 我有许多事情要做，不能参加后天九点举行的会议。
5. 背着一个篮子，他开始爬山了。
6. 背在妈妈的背上，这个小孩睡着了。
7. 请填好表格，写下你的姓名和地址。
8. 我觉得特别疲倦，因此吃完饭我就上床了。
9. 他一认出他童年时期的那位朋友，就走了过去向他问好。
10. 他认出了她，可是假装着没看到他。
11. 正在修理的那台收音机是谁的？

12. 正在翻译成英语的那本小说是一位青年作家写的。
13. 我觉得有人溜进了我的房间。
14. 那孩子听到有人一步一步地在上楼梯。
15. 你每隔多久叫人把房间油漆一次？
16. 你的衣服是自己做的还是叫别人做的？
17. 关掉水龙头，别让水浪费掉。
18. 老师们让孩子们在草地上玩。（再变为被动语态）

二. 把下列从句变为简单句（带分词）

1. When I entered the room , I saw a strange sight.
2. As I did not know her address , I could not write to her.
3. Though I admit what you say, I still think you should meet him.
4. When he was left alone, the boy began to cry.
5. After he has locked the door, he goes out for a walk.

三. 选择填空（历届高考题）

1. ----How did the audience (观众) receive the new play?
----They got very _____.(85)
 - A . excite
 - B . excited
 - C . excitedly
 - D . exciting
2. This news sounds _____.(85)
 - A . encouraging
 - B . encouraged
 - C . encourage
 - D . to encourage
3. ____anything about the accident, he went to work as usual.(85)
 - A . Not known
 - B . known not
 - C . Knowing not
 - D . Not knowing
4. ----How did Bob do in the exams this time?
----Well, his father seems ____with his results.
 - A . pleasing
 - B . please
 - C . pleased
 - D . to please.
5. My brother is busy ____for the exam.(86)
 - A . preparing
 - B . to prepare
 - C . prepared
 - D . was prepares
6. When he was decorating his house, he got the bedroom _____

first.(87)

- A . to paint
- B . painting
- C . painted
- D . to be painted

7 . ____his manners, he put his feet up on the desk.(88)

- A . Forgotten
- B . Forgetting
- C . Being forgetting
- D . Being forgotten

8 . ____more attention, the trees could have grown better.

- A . Given
- B . To give
- C . Giving
- D . Having given

9 . The secretary worked late into the night, ____a long speech for the president.(91)

- A . to prepare
- B . preparing
- C . prepared
- D . was preparing

10 . The murderer was brought in, with his hands ____ behind his back.(91)

- A . beeing tied
- B . having tied
- C . to be tied
- D . tied

11 . ____a reply, he decided to write again.(92)

- A . Not receiving
- B . Receiving not
- C . Not having received
- D . Having not received

12 . “ Can't you read? ” Mary said ____ to the notice.(93)

- A . angrily pointing
- B . and point angrily
- C . angrily pointed
- D . and angrily pointing

13 . The visiting Minister expressed his satisfaction with the talks, ____ that he had enjoyed his stay here.(94)

- A . having added
- B . to add
- C . adding
- D . added

14 . The first text book ____ for teaching English as a foreign

language came out in the 16th century.(94)

- A . having written
- B . to be written
- C . being written
- D . written

15 . The missing boys were last seen ____ near the river.(94)

- A . playing
- B . to be playing
- C . play
- D . to play

解答

一 .

1 . I want some boiling water to make tea.

2 . Don't drink the water in the rivers, you can/may drink cold boiled water.

3 . The TV sets to be produced will be as good as those imported from abroad.

4 . I have a lot of things to do, so I won't be able to attend the meeting to be held at nine the day after tomorrow.

5 . Carrying a basket on his back , he began to climb the hill.

6 . Carried on its mother's back , the baby fell asleep.

7 . Please fill in the form, giving your name and address.

8 . Being very tired, I went to bed soon after dinner.

9 . Recognizing the old friend of his in his childhood, he went over to say hello to him.

10 . Having recognized her , he pretended not to have seen her .

11 . Whose is the TV set being repaired?

12 . The novel being translated into English was written by a young writer .

13 . I felt somebody steal into my room.

14 . The child heard someone coming upstairs step by step.

15 . How often do you have (get) your room painted?

16 . Did you make your clothes yourself or have them made?

17 . Turn off the tap. Don't have the water running to waste!

18 . The teachers let the children play on the grass.

被动 : The children were let (to) play on the grass.

二 .

1 . Entering the room, I saw a strange sight.

2 . Not knowing her address, I could not write to her.

3 . Admitting what you say, I still think you should meet him.

4 . Left alone, the boy began to cry.

5 . Having locked the door, he goes out for a walk.

三 .

1 . B

2 . A

3 . D

4 . C

5 . A	6 . C	7 . B	8 . A
9 . B	10 . D	11 . C	12 . A
13 . C	14 . D	15 . A	

第 6 章 助动词和情态动词

第 6 章	助动词和情态动词
1. 助动词	159
2. 情态动词的意义与种类	161
3. can, may, must	162
4. Will, Shall 的用法	172
5. ought to 和 should 的用法	173
6. would 和 used to (be used to doing)	176
7. need 和 dare 的用法	179

1 助动词

1 助动词的定义

在英语中，助动词本身没有词义，主要帮助构成谓语，表示时态、语态、语气或构成否定或疑问形式，助动词在句子中必须同主语的人称和数一致。

He is reading the newspaper. (时态)

他在看报纸。

Tom was punished by his teacher. (语态)

汤姆被他的老师处罚。

Do be quiet ,please. (语气)

请千万要肃静。

She does not speak English. (否定)

她不讲英语。

Did you read this book? (疑问)

你看过这本书吗？

2 助动词的种类

五个助动词(be, have, do, shall ,will)			
原形	现在时	过去时	过去分词
be	is, am, are	was, were	been
have	have, has	had	had
do	do, does	did	done
—	shall	should	—
—	will	would	—

3 助动词的用法如下

1. be 动词的用法

a. be +现在分词 进行时态

b. be +过去分词 被动词态 (参见第 2 章被动语态)

c. be +不定式 (to + 动词原形) 表示约定、义务、希望、可能 (参见第 3 章不定式)

We are to meet at the school at noon. (约定)

我们中午将在学校见面。

You are **to** obey your parents. (义务)

你必须服从父母。

2. have 的用法

a. have +过去分词 现在完成时 (主动语态)

b. have + been +过去分词 现在完成时 (被动语态)

c. have +been +现在分词 现在完成进行时

(参见第一章现在完成时和现在完成进行时)

d. have + to +动词原形 作“必须”解(=must)

I have to work hard during this vacation.

这个假期中我必须努力工作。

说明

am, is, are, was, were, **have, has, had, do, does, did**

既可作助动词又可作实义动词。

She **does** not speak English. (助动词)

她不讲英语。

She **does** her work carefully. (实义动词)

她做事很仔细。

3. shall/will 的用法

shall/ will +动词原形 将来时

should/would +动词原形 过去将来时或虚拟语气

(参见第7章动词语气)

4. do 的用法

助动词 do 只有三个形式: do, does, did

a. 构成疑问句和否定句

疑问句: Do(Does, Did)+主语+动词原形...?

否定句: 主语+do(does, did) not +动词原形...?

Did you sleep well last night?

你昨晚睡得好吗?

She does **not** speak English.

她不说英语。

b. 用在动词原形之前, 加强语气

此时助动词只有两个形式 do, did。

He did answer (in) this way.

他确实是这么回答的。

I do believe you can do it well.

我真的(确实)相信你能把这件事做好。

c. 代替前面刚提到的动词以避免重复

I like English and so does he.

我喜欢英语, 他也喜欢。

He doesn't watch TV everyday and nor (neither) do I.

他不是每天都看电视, 我也如此。

He works hard but his son doesn't.

他工作努力, 可他儿子则不然。

Do you like English?

你喜欢英语吗？

Yes, I do. (No, I don't)

是的，我喜欢。（不，我不喜欢。）

Shall I do it by myself?

我可以独自一个人做吗？

Yes, do.

做吧！（表示赞同、鼓励）

注意

do 不可以代替 be、助动词或情态动词

Can you swim?

Yes, I can. ()

Yes, I do. (x)

Are you a student?

Yes, I am. ()

Yes, I do. (x)

必背！

加强副词的语气句型：

副词+ do +主语+动词

（参见第8章倒装部分）

d. 用于倒装句，特别强调 never, rarely, seldom, so 等副词
详见第8章倒装部分。

Never did I see such an animal.

(=I never saw such an animal.)

我从未见过这样的动物。

2 情态动词的意义与种类

1 情态动词的定义

而情态动词和助动词的不同点是：

有词意

没有人称和数的变化

也就是说，它在任何主语后形式都是一样的，这情态动词和助动词最大的差异。

后面必须跟动词原形。

在情态动词后一般要跟不带 to 的动词不定式（ought to 除外）。

情态动词后面的动词不定式可以是一般形式（即动词原形），也可以是完成形式（have done）和进行形式（be doing）。（以上以 do 为例。）

2 情态动词的种类

原形	过去式	词意	同义词组
can	could	能够	be able to
may	might	可以、也许	
must	must(had to)	必须	has } have }to
have to	had to	必须，不得不	must
had better	had better	最好	可以是实义动词和情态动词，主要
need	needed	需要	用于否定、疑问词句中、在肯定
dare	dared	敢于	句中是实义动词
shall	should	应该	ought to
will	would	愿意	
ought to	ought to	应该	should

有关情态动词的用法，详见下面各小节。

3 can, may, must

肯定句：主语+ **can, may, must** 动词原形

否定句：主语+ **can, may, must + not** +动词原形

疑问句：**Can, May, Must** + 主语+动词原形？

1 can(could)的用法

1. 表示能力；能；会(=be able to)

He can speak English.

他会说英语。

Mary can (=is able to) type well and her mother could type well when she was young.

玛丽打字很好，她妈妈年轻时打字打得也很好。

注意

can 表“能力”时的时态变化

现在式 can 过去式 could

将来式 be able to 完成式 been able to

I'll be able to help you tomorrow.

我明天能帮助你。

He is ill. He hasn't been able to go to school for one week.

他病了，他已经一周没去上学了。

说明

can 表示“能力”时，和 be able to 相当，许多场合都可以互相替换。但当叙述过去经过一番努力才能完成的事情，不可用 could，只能用 was (were) able to。

He could(=was able to) swim when he was six years old.

他六岁时就会游泳了。

(叙述一般的能力)

He was able to swim half-way before he collapsed.

在他筋疲力竭以前已游过了一半。

(指经过了相当的努力, 所以不用 could)

2. 表示可能, 能够

I'm sorry, I **can't** do that.

对不起, 我不可能做那个。

I **can** draw a horse in five minutes.

我能够在五分钟之内画好一匹马。

A computer **can't** think for itself ; it must be told what to do.

计算机不能自己思考, 它必须按照人类编的程序去做。

3. 表示允许; 许可 (can = may, can't = must not)

表示允许时可用 can, could, may, might 表达, 它们没有时态上的差别, 只是 could 比 can, might 比 may 语气上要客气。(用 can 或 could 表示“许可”, 虽然很普通, 但正式、庄重的场合用 may 或 might 为宜。)

Could I borrow your dictionary?

劳驾, 我可以借你的字典用用吗?

Yes, of course you can.

当然可以。

Could (Can) you tell me how to get the zoo?

劳驾您能告诉我怎么去动物园吗?

Mr. Li asked me whether I **could** go with him.

李先生问我是否可以跟他一起去。

(此句中 could 不能用 can 代替)

(间接引语中主句是过去时 (asked) 从句要用过去式)

注意

在间接引语中用 could 表示过去的“允许”, 见左例。

4. 表示推测 (专用在疑问句和否定句)

在表示推测的句子中, 一般用于否定句和疑问句中。在此种用法中 can 和 could 没有时态的区别, 只是表示可能性的大小, can 表示推测的可能性比 could 要大。

a. 对于现在状态的推测

否定句: 主语+can(could)+ not +动词原形

(原动词或状态动词)

疑问句: Can(Could)+主语+动词原形?

(状态动词或系动词)

The young girl **can't (couldn't) be** our new chairman.

这位年轻姑娘不可能是我们的新主席。

Can (Could) the news **be** true?

这消息能是真的吗?

b. 对于现在动作的推测

否定句: 主语+can(could)+ not + be +现在分词

(行为动词)

疑问句: Can(Could)+主语+ be +现在分词?

(行为动词)

He can't be reading in the reading room, for I saw him in the street just now.

他不可能在阅览室看书，因为我刚刚在街上看见他。

Mary studies hard. Now she **can't (couldn't) be sleeping**. She must be studying.

玛丽学习努力，现在她不可能在睡觉，她肯定正在学习。

It's too late. **Can (Could) they be doing** the experiment?

太晚了，他们可能还在做实验吗？

They must (may) be arguing. But I am interested in what they **can (could) be arguing**.

他们肯定在争吵，我感兴趣的是他们可能在争论什么呢？

说明

cannot, can not 两种写法因人而异，但 can not 较为普遍，cannot 有时被认为略为正式及加强语气之用法。

c. 对于过去事实的推测

否定句：主语+can (could) + not + have + 过去分词

疑问句：Can (Could) + 主语 + have + 过去分词？

He **can't (couldn't) have watched** TV yesterday for he knew they would have an exam. He must have gone over his lessons.

昨天他不可能看电视，因为他知道快要考试了，他一定在复习功课。

The road isn't wet. It **can't (couldn't) have rained** last night. 路面没有湿，昨天晚上肯定没下雨。

I don't know why she didn't call me yesterday. **Can (Could) she have forgotten** my telephone number?

我不知道昨天她为什么没给我打电话，难道她会把我的电话号码忘了吗？

5. could 在虚拟条件句中构成谓语

{ could + 动词原形 表与现在事实相反

{ could + have + 过去分词 表与过去事实相反

详见第7章动词语气。

必背！

could have + 过去分词

表示对过去能做而未做的事感到惋惜，遗憾。

If you followed my advice, you **could have finished** it .

如果你那时听我的，你早已做完了。

If I **could fly**, I should be very glad.

如果我能飞，我将会很高兴。

2 may, might 的用法

1. 表示请求、许可 (否定为 **must not**)

在口语中可用 can, could 代替 may ,但在正式场合中要有 may.

You **may not** leave the reading room till you return the books. 你还了书之后才能离开阅览室。

May (Can, Could, Might) I have a talk with you?

我可以和你谈话吗？

May I use your pen?

我可以用一下你的钢笔吗？

Sure./ No, you can't.

当然可以了。/不，不可以。

May (Might) I come into the room to see my mother?

我可以进房间看看我母亲吗？

Yes, please. /No, you mustn't. She needs to have a good rest.

可以，请进吧！/不，你不能进。她需要好好休息。

说明

may 表示允许时，也可用 might 代替，might 不表示过去时，而是表示口气比较婉转。

2. 表示推测（否定为 may not）

在表示推测的句子中，一般用于肯定句，在此种用法中，might 和 may 没有时态的区别，只是表示可能性的大小。may 表示的可能性比 might 要大。

May I ~ ? 的回答	
肯定回答	否定回答
Yes, please.	No, you can't. (口语中常用)
(Yes,) certainly.	No, you mustn't. (具有强烈禁止的意思)
Yes, of course.	Please don't.
Sure.	I don't think you can.

a. 对于现在状态的推测

主语 + may (might) + V (状态动词或系动词)

She is coming to us. She **may (might) be** our new teacher.

她朝我们走来了，她可能是咱们的新老师。

The bottle looks blue. There **may (might) be** some ink in it.

这个瓶子看起来是蓝色的，里面可能还有点儿墨水。

b. 对于现在动作的推测

主语 + may (might) + be + 现在分词 (行为动词)

Where is Tom?

He **may (might) be having** breakfast.

汤姆在哪里？

他可能正在吃早饭。

My mother **may (might) be cooking** now.

我妈妈可能正在做饭。

c. 对于过去事实的推测

主语 + may (might) + have + 动词的过去分词

Where were you last night?

你昨天晚上在哪儿？

I **might have watched** TV or have gone over my lessons.

我可能在看电视或在复习功课。

He seems know the city quite well. He **may (might) have been** there before.

他似乎对那个城市很熟悉。他以前可能去过那儿。

3. 在目的状语从句中构成谓语

主句 +	{	that...	may (might) + V
		so that...	may(might) + V 为了 ; 以便
		in order that...	may (might) + V

比较

may + 原形动词

表对现在或未来的推测

may have + 过去分词

表对过去的推测

注意

may 表推测时，通常不用在疑问句中，而以 **Be + S + likely to** 或 **Do + S + think** 代替。

Is she likely to travel?

她可能去旅行吗？

Do you think we shall win.

你想我们会赢吗？

He wants to take a taxi that (so that ,in order that) he **may** get there in time.

他想坐出租车，这样他就能及时到达那里。

I arrived at the airport earlier in order that (so that, that) I **might** meet him. 我早早地就到了机场为了能接到他。

4. may 有时可以表示祝愿

May you succeed.

祝你成功。

说明

may not 有三个意思

作“不可以”解，表不允许 (=must not)

回答 May I...? 答句中的 may not 为“不可以”之意。

May I go? No, you **may not** (=must not).

我可以去吗？不，你不可以。

回答 can...? 答句中的 may not 为“可能不”之意。

Can it be true? It may be, or **may not** be.

这可能是真的吗？可能是，也**可能不是**。

may not 也表示“可以不”

You **may not** go.

你可以不去。

必背！

may/might 的惯用语

may well +动词原形(=have good reason to) 理所当然

You may well say so.

你有足够的理由这样说(你说得对。)

may (might) as well (=had better) 最好

You may as well say so.

你最好这样说。

may as well +动词原形...+ as +动词原形

与其.....不如.....; 最好.....而不要.....

You might as well throw your money away as lend it to him.

你把钱借给他,还不如把它丢掉。

3 must, have to 的用法

1. 表示必要性, 作“必须、应该、一定要”解

如果表示主观看法, 表示有做某一动作的必要或义务时, 即必须做什么、应该做什么时一般要用 must, 表示是自己的职责。

Everybody **must** obey the rule.

人人都必须遵守制度。

I **must** do it myself.

我必须自己做。

Father is sleeping. You **mustn't** wake him up. (语气强烈)

爸爸在睡觉, 你一定不要叫醒他。

Must I wake him up?

我必须要把他叫醒吗?

Yes, you **must**.

是的。

说明

must 的否定

must not

表示禁止, 意思是“不可以”, “不许”

don't have to (=need not)

表示没有义务, 没有必要。

(回答 Must ~ ? 问句时, 它的否定回答, 按意思要求大多当“不必”解, 所以要用 need not 或 don't have to 表示)

比较

must 和 have to 的区别

must 含强烈说话者的决意(表示主观的看法)

have to 则表外力环境或习惯所使然(即表示客观的必要, 作“不得不”解)在口语中 have got to 可代替 must。

You **must** obey your parents.

你必须服从父母亲。

My father is ill. I have to stay at home to take care of him.
我父亲病了，我必须（不得不）留在家照顾他。

注意

must 的时态

过去式：had to (但在间接引语中可用 must)。

将来式：shall (will) have to

No, you needn't. (No, you don't have to.)

不，你不必。

You mustn't go. =Don't go

你不能走。别走。

I thought I must help him.

我想我必须帮助他。

Last week we had to have a party for her.

上周我们不得不给她开个晚会。

Next year you will have to finish your schooling.

明年我将不得不（必须）结束你的学业了。

They have had to answer the same question three times.

他们已不得不三次回答这同一个问题了。

2. 表示推测

must 在用于表示推测的句子中，一般用于肯定句。它的肯定程度比 may, might 要大得多，一般译为“肯定”。

a. 对于现在状态的推测

主语+ must +V. (状态动词或系动词)

He must be in his office for he called me from there five minutes ago.

他现在肯定在他的办公室里，因为他五分钟前刚从那儿给我打来了电话。

Listen. There must be some children in the room.

听，房间里肯定有一些孩子。

b. 对于现在动作的推测

主语+ must + be +现在分词 (行为动词)

Put on more clothes. You must be feeling cold with only a shirt on.

多穿点儿衣服，你只穿一件衬衣，肯定觉得冷。

Mr. Li must be cleaning the room.

李先生肯定在打扫房间呢。

c. 对于过去事实的推测

主语+ must +have +过去分词

说明

You must not (mustn't...)

等于否定的祈使句。

比较

道义上的必要时，用 ought to do sth.

I feel I ought to speak out.

我感觉我应当说出来。

必背！

must +原形动词

对现在的推测

must +have +过去分词

对过去的推测

must be +现在分词

对将来或现在正在...的推测

The road is wet. It **must have rained** last night.

路是湿的，昨天晚上肯定下雨了。

I didn't hear the phone. I **must have been** asleep.

我没听见电话铃响，我肯定睡着了。

I rang your flat yesterday. A man answered but I didn't recognize the voice.

昨天我给你单元（家）打电话，一个人接了电话，但我没听出来是谁的声音。

Oh, it **must have been** my brother Peter.

哦！那一定是我哥哥彼得。

注意

must have +过去分词若用于虚拟语气的主句中时，可表**与过去事实相反**。

You must have caught the bus if you had got up earlier.

如果你早一点起床，你一定赶上那一班公共汽车。

（事实上没有赶上公共汽车）

情态动词表示推测的用法

肯定：用 must may might

否定：用 can could

（must, might, could 不表示时态；而表示推测程度由强 弱）

对现在情况推测时

肯定：must, may, might +be

must, may, might +be doing...

否定：can, could + not + be...

can, could +not +be doing...

疑问：Can, Could + be...?

Can, Could +be doing...?

对过去情况推测时

肯定：must, may, might +have been...

must, may, might + have done...

否定：can, could +not +have been...

can, could +not +have done...

疑问：Can, Could +have been...?

Can, Could +have done...?

4 Will, Shall 的用法

主要用于下列两种句型：

1 第一种句型

Will you...? 请为我做某事好吗？

请求对方做某事

请注意回答：

肯定回答	否定回答
Yes, I will. 是的，可以。	No, I won't. 不，不行。
Sure. 当然了。	I'm sorry .I can't. 对不起，不行。
All right. 好啊！	No, thank you. 不，不行。
Certainly. 当然可以。	
Yes, please. 是的，请。	

2 第二种句型

Shall I...? 我要.....吗？

Shall we...? 我们一起.....吗？

以上两种句型都是询问对方，我或我们是否能做某事。其中 Shall we...? 与 Let 's... 意思上很相近。

也请注意回答。

Shall I carry it for you?

我来帮你搬它好吗？

Yes, please.

好吧！

Yes, thank you.

好吧！谢谢你。

No, thank you.

不，谢谢！

Shall we sing a song? Let's sing a song.

我们唱一支歌好吗？让我们一起唱吧。

Yes, let's.

好吧！

All right.

好吧！

No, let's not.

不，别唱了。

(此部分详见初级版第12章 P.157-159)

5 ought to 和 should 的用法

ought to 和 should 的意思相近，在大多数情况下可通用，但 ought to 比 should 的语气更强些。

1 ought to (=should)+动词原形

指现在或未来，表义务、劝告、推测等，作“应该”解。

ought to : 应该 (表“道义”上的责任)，是从“义务”或“推理推断”的角度来讲的。

should : “应当……”，是从说话人的个人看法这一角度来讲的。

1. ought to 应该 (情态动词中唯一一个带有 to 者)

肯定句 : 主语+ought to +动词原形

否定句 : 主语+ought not (oughtn't) to +动词原形

疑问句 :

{ Ought + 主语 + to + 动词原形... ?
{ Ought + 主语 + not to + 动词原形... ?
{ = Oughtn't + 主语 + to + 动词原形... ?

You are her mother, You ought to look after her.

你是她的母亲，你应当照管她。

(是道义上的责任，不能和 should 互换。)

We ought to defend our country.

我们应当保卫我们的家。

注意

ought to 没有过去式或别的形式，因此表达它的时态时，或是加上时间状语，或通过上下文来理解，或通过 in ought to 后接不定式的不同结构来表达。

(第一个公民应尽的义务)

You ought to respect your parents.

你应当尊敬你的父母亲。

(主语是 you，含有“劝告”的意思)

You ought not to read in the sun.

你不应当在阳光下看书。

Ought you (I) to obey the rule?

你(我)应当遵守这一规定吗?

Yes, you ought (to).

是的，你必须遵守。

No, you ought not (to).

不，你不必遵守这规定。

Oughtn't we to do everything possible to stop pollution?

难道我们不应当尽可能地制止污染吗？(难道我们不应当尽可能做任何可以做的每一件事来制止污染吗？)

You ought to hand in the exercise next week.

你应当下周交练习。

(可你没交，含责备的意思。详见下文 should 详解)

2. should 应当

should 语气比 ought to 要弱，而且从说话人个人角度来看应该做的程度要大。

We should encourage him for we are his classmates.

我们应该鼓励他，我们是他的同班同学啊！

One **shouldn't** be selfish.

人啊！千万别自私。

It's nearly seven o'clock. Jack **should** be here at any moment.

已经快七点了，杰克随时都可能（应可能）到这儿。

If he had had the money, he **should** have bought it.

如果当时他有钱，早就把它买下来了。

I **shouldn't** worry if I were you.

如果我是你的话，我就不会担心。

比较

should +原形动词

现在及将来应该做

should +have +过去分词

过去应该做而未做

（参见 P.96）

should 可构成虚拟语气

（参阅 P.191）

2 ought to 和 should 表示责备的用法

1. 表示对现在动作的责怪、批评（应做的事却没做）

should (ought to) } + be + Ving
shouldn't (oughtn't to) }

You **should be washing** your clothes. Why are you playing Ping-Pong ball?

你应该在洗你的衣服（可是你没洗）。为什么你现在在打乒乓球？

The boys **shouldn't be playing** football. They should be at school.

这些孩子们不应该在踢足球，他们应该在学校里。

You are ill. You **shouldn't be working** here. You should be at home.

你病了，你现在不应该在这儿工作，而应该在家卧床休息。

should 在疑问句中可以表示惊讶、不合理、难以置信或不应该。

Why should he do that?

为何他竟会做出那种事？

How should I know?

我怎么会知道？

2. 表示对过去动作的责备、批评

should (ought to) } + have + 过去分词
shouldn't (oughtn't to) }

You **should have gone over** your lessons.

(In fact you didn't go over your lessons.)

你们应把功课复习好的（可实际上你们没有）。

You **shouldn't (oughtn't to) have watched** TV last

你们昨天晚上不应该看电视。（可你们看了。）

I'm feeling sick. I **shouldn't have eaten** so much ice cream. (I ate too much ice cream.)

我觉得恶心，我不应该吃那么多冰淇淋。（可我吃了太多的冰淇淋）

I **should (ought to) have taken** her home yesterday. But I was too busy then. I didn't do that.

昨天我应该把她送回来，可我当时太忙了，我没送她。

I wonder why they're so late. They **should (ought to) have been** here two hours ago.

我不知道为什么他们来得这么晚，他们应该在两个小时之前到达的。

You **shouldn't (oughtn't to) have been** listening to our conversation. ()

你不应该听我们的谈话。

注意

在表示要求、命令、劝告、建议时，语气强弱如下：must（必须）
ought to（应当） should（应该） had better（最好）语气由强渐弱。

should 或 ought to 后还可以跟完成进行式，表达的意思与后面加完成式一样。should (ought to) shouldn't (oughtn't to) + have been doing = should(ought to) + have done

3 had better 最好

否定式 had better not do sth. 最好不要做.....

had better 只有一种形式，had 不能用 had, have 代替，它不能单独作谓语，后面必须跟动词原形。

You'd better **visit** the place.

你最好参观一下这个地方。

He had better **learn** a second language.

他最好再学一门第二外语。

She'd better **not ask** questions now.

她最好现在别问问题。

6 would 和 used to (be used to doing)

1 would 的用法

1. 委婉地提出请求、建议（三个句型）

a. **Would you ...?** 表示客气的请求

与 Will you ...? 同义，但 Would you ...? 更客气一些。

would like 的用法

would like (=want) 作“愿.....、欲.....”解，表客气的请求。

would like to + 动词原形 想要（愿）做.....

I would like to go there.（我愿意去那里。）

Would like + sb. + to + 动词原形 希望某人做.....

I would like you to do it again.（我希望你再做一次。）

Would you like + 名词 ~? 邀约，表请客

Would you like some tea?（喝点茶吧？）

Would you like to + 动词原形? 邀约, 表请客
Would you like to have a cup of tea? (喝一杯茶吧?)
Would you (Will you) please be quiet?
请您安静一下好吗?

(回答同 Will you ...? 参见 P. 172)

b. **主语+would like to +V....** 想要、愿意干.....
和 want to do sth. 相近, 但比它要客气。

I **would like to** take a taxi.

=I want to take a taxi.

我想坐出租汽车。

c. **Would you like sth.?**

Would you like to do sth.? 你愿意.....?

注意

would like 后加动词时需加 to:

would like to do sth.

而 Will you ...? Would you ...? 后加动词则不能加 to:

Will you do it?

Would you like coffee?

你喝杯咖啡好吗?

Would you like to do morning exercises?

你做早操好吗?

2. 表示过去反复发生的动作

would 与 used to sth. 同义, 都表示过去多次发生的习惯动作, 但 used to 表较有规则的习惯, would 较无规则。

In class he **would** ask some silly questions, and his classmates **would** laugh at him.

课上, 他总是问一些愚问题, 他的同学们总是嘲笑他。

When I pass my school I **would** see my teachers who taught me 5 years ago.

我路过我母校时, 我总是进去看看五年前教我的老师。

2 used to 的用法

1. used to +动词原形 (表过去的习惯)

表过去 (规则) 的习惯或某时期的状况, 但现今已不存在。

I **used to** drink tea.

我过去总是喝茶。

He **used to** smoke. (But now he never smokes.)

他过去抽烟。(现在不再抽烟了。)

When he was young he **would** smoke a lot.

他年轻时, 他总是吸许多烟。(不含有和现在的比较, 现在他也许还在抽, 也许不抽了。)

2. be used to sth. (doing sth.) 习惯于.....

get used to sth. (doing sth.) 对.....变习惯, 习惯于.....

它们在形式上易与 used to do 相混, 但意思上和语法结构上有很大不同 be (get) used to 中的 to 是介词, 所以后面可以跟名词、代词或动

名词，而 used to 后需跟动词不定式，to 是小品词。

Now he **is / get used to** fat meat.

=Now he **is / get used to** eating fat meat.

现在他已经习惯于吃肥肉了。

He **used to** eat fat meat. (But now he doesn't eat it.)

他过去吃肥肉。(现在不吃了。)

He **would** eat fat meat when he was in the countryside.

他在农村时，他总是吃肥肉。

Li Ming **was/got used to** sitting up all right during the war.

战争期间，李明习惯于熬夜了。

比较

would 和 used to

used to do sth. 含有与现在比较的意思，即过去常做，而现在不做了。而 would 没有这一含义。

would 经常和表示过去时间的短语、从句一起连用，或通过上下文可以明确是过去的事。而 used to 则不必。

Li Ming **used to** sit up all night ,and that was harmful to his health.

李明过去总是熬夜（现在不熬夜了），那样对他的身体非常有害。

Li Ming **would** sit up all night during the war.

战争期间，李明总是熬夜。（现在也许还是熬夜，也许不熬夜了。）

7 need 和 dare 的用法

need 和 dare 这两个词都是既可以当情态动词 ,又可以当实义动词的词。

1 dare 的用法

1. 作为情态动词

a. 用于一般的否定句和疑问句

疑问句：Dare + 主语+动词原形...? (有勇气否)

否定句：主语+ daren't +动词原形 (不敢...)

dare 作为情态动词时主要用于疑问句和否定句，一般不用于肯定句中。

I **dare not (daren't)**walk through the forest at night.

我不敢在黑夜穿过森林。

Dare you walk through the forest at night?

你敢在黑夜穿过森林吗？

Yes, I dare. 是的，我敢。

No, I daren't. 不，我不敢。

b. 可以用于表示怀疑的名词从句中

比较

I wonder how he **dare say** such things.

□ 情态动词

I wonder how he **dares to say** such things.

□ 实义动词

我真奇怪他怎么竟敢说出这样的话。

We don't know whether he **dare (dares to) climb** the mountain.

我们不知道他是否敢爬那座山。

c. 条件状语从句中

If the enemy **dare enter** the village, we'll fight against them to the end.

如果敌人胆敢进入村里，我们就和他们战斗到底。

If Xiao Li **dare skate** on the lake, his parents will beat him.

如果小李敢在湖面上滑冰，他父母亲就会打他。

辨别正误

() You dare go, so dare I.

(×) You dare to go, so do I.

你敢去，我也敢去。

2. 作为实义动词

dare 可以当实义动词，此时多用于肯定句中，但在疑问句和否定句也可运用。和实义动词一样 dare 在句子中要随着主语的人称和数发生变化。

You **dare not go**. =(You **don't dare to go**.)

() But Mary dares to go.

(×) But Mary dare go.

(因为 dare 作为情态动词时，不能用于肯定句之中)

He **doesn't dare to walk** at night. (作实义动词)

=He **daren't walk** at night. (情态动词)

他不敢走夜路。

Does he **dare to walk** at night? (作实义动词)

=**Dare** he **walk** at night? (作情态动词)

他敢走夜路吗？

He **didn't dare to walk** at night fifteen years ago.

(作实义动词)

=He **daren't walk** (=dared not walk) fifteen years ago.

(作情态动词)

他十五年前不敢走夜路。

注意

dare 当情态动词时，可指现在或未来，而过去时为 dared。如果上下文有表过去时间的字样，可有 dared 指过去。

He **dared not (daren't)** do it last week.

他上周不敢做

注意

口语中 dare 后面的 to 有时可省略。

He **dares to go**.

=He dares go.

必背！

“ I dare say. ” 已成为惯用语，译为“ 我以为 ”、“ 大概 ”。

I dare say he has won.

我以为他已经赢了。

Will you dare to do the same experiment? (作实义动词)

=Dare you do the same experiment tomorrow. (作情态动词)

明天你敢做同样的实验吗？

2 need 的用法

1. 作为情态动词

a. 用于否定句和疑问句

否定句：主语+needn't+动词原形 (不需要.....)

疑问句：Need+主语+动词原形...? (需要.....与否)

need 和 dare 一样，作为情态动词时，主要用于否定句和疑问句，一般不用于肯定句之中。作为情态动词，它的词形只有一个 need。

You needn't return the book now. You can keep it till next week if you like.

现在你不必还书，你如果愿意，你可以在下周还。

You needn't show your pass at the entrance unless the guard asks you for it.

在入口处你可以不必出示通行证，除非卫兵要求你出示它。

Shall I tell John about it?

我要把这件事告诉约翰吗？

No, you needn't. I've told him already.

不，不必了，我已经告诉他了。

Need he go yesterday?

=Did he need to go yesterday? (实义动词)

昨天他需要去吗？

Yes, he must.

是的，他必需去。

No, he needn't.

不，他不需要。

b. 用于对过去的责备

必背！

need not do

=don't have to do

没有必要

I needn't go this week.

=I don't have to go this week.

这星期我不必去。

注意

need 作情态动词时，只用于否定句和疑问句中，在肯定句中常被 must, have to, ought to, should 等情态动词所取代。

need have done 需要做某事，可没做

needn't have done 没有必要做某事，可是做了

比较

The train station is close to us. You **needn't have hurried** there early.

火车站离这儿很近，你没必要早早地赶到那儿。（可是你早早地到那儿）

I know the train station is close to us. I **didn't need to hurry** there early.

我知道火车站离这儿很近，因此我也没必要早早到那儿。（实际上也没早到那儿）

2. 作实义动词

need 和 dare 一样，也可以作实义动词，此时可用于肯定句、否定句和疑问句之中，它要随着主语的人称和数而变化。它和其它实义动词一样，有过去式 needed。过去分词 needed，现在分词 needing 和 needs 形式。

He has grown up. We **don't need to worry** about him. (作实义动词)

=He has grown up, We **needn't worry** about him. (作情态动词)
他已经长大了，我们不必为他担心。

() He **needs to go** there himself.

(x) He need go there himself.

他需要亲自去那儿一趟。

(need 作为情态动词时不用于肯定句中)

比较

上句还可以用 need 作为情态动词来表达。

Does she **need to** go there?

她需要去那里吗？

Yes, she does. [(x) Yes, she need.]

是的，她需要。

No, she doesn't. [(x) No, she needn't.] 不，她不需要。

如果问句中 need 是实义动词，则回答时需按实义动词来回答，即用 do, does, don't, doesn't。

Need she **go** there?

她有必要去那儿吗？ Yes, she must. / No, she needn't.

是的，有必要。 / 不，没必要。

Do you **need to** start at once? (作实义动词)

Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

=**Need** you **start** at once? (作助动词)

Yes, I must. / No, I needn't.

你要马上就开吗？

是的，必须马上就开。 / 不，不必。

必背！

句型：**主语(物) + need (want, request) + doing (to be done)**

当 need 作实义动词时，且其主语是物（绝大多数情况下），需要修

理、缝补……时，need 和 want，request 一样后面用动名词的主动形式来表示被动含义或用不定式的被动形式来表示。

The house **needs cleaning** (to be cleaned).

这房子需要打扫了。

The radio **needs repairing** (to be repaired).

这台收音机需要修理了。

The boy looks pale. He **needs examining** (He needs to be examined).

这个男孩看起来脸色苍白，他需要做一下身体检查。

(虽然主语不是物，但含义与之相同。)

Practice 实力测验

一. 用适当的情态动词填空

1. It ___ sound strange, but it is true.
2. ___ such a man be good?
3. You ___ not park here, The notice says "No parking".
4. He ___ be mad to say such a thing.
5. He ___ to smoke, but now he doesn't.
6. Must I go there? No, you ___ not.
7. You ___ not to break your promise.
8. He knows the answer, but ___ not answer.
9. When I was young, I ___ sing for hours.
10. A bear ___ not touch a dead body.
11. You ___ not ask a woman her age.
12. He ___ have called her, but he didn't.

二. 用 used to, be used to 和 would 填空

1. After dinner we ___ have some chocolates and some apples or oranges.
2. I ___ like chocolate, but now I like fruits.
3. He ___ live in the countryside, So he ___ do hard work, But I am not used to doing hard work. I am sure I ___ it soon.

三. 选择填空 (历届高考题)

1. Put on more clothes, You ___ be feeling cold with only a shirt on. (85)
 - A. can
 - B. could
 - C. would
 - D. must
2. I thought you ___ like something to read, so I have brought you some books. (86)
 - A. may
 - B. might
 - C. could

- D . must
- 3 . You ____ show your pass at the entrance unless the guard asks you for it.(87)
- A . mustn't
 - B . cannot
 - C . needn't
 - D . won't
- 4 . You ____ return the book now. You can keep it till next week if you like.(88)
- A . can't
 - B . mustn't
 - C . needn't
 - D . may not
- 5 . Mother ____ us stories when we were young. (88)
- A . was used to tell
 - B . is used to telling
 - C . used to tell
 - D . used to telling.
- 6 . I didn't hear the phone, I ____ asleep. (89)
- A . must be
 - B . must have been
 - C . should be
 - D . should have been
- 7 . ----I rang your flat yesterday. A man answered but I didn't recognize the 7.voice.----Oh, it ____ my brother Peter. (88)
- A . must be
 - B . must have been
 - C . can have been
 - D . might be
- 8 . Where is my pen? I ____ it. (88)
- A . might lose
 - B . would have lost
 - C . should have lost
 - D . must have lost
- 9 . A computer ____ think for itself; it must be told what to do. (91)
- A . can't
 - B . couldn't
 - C . may not
 - D . might not
- 10 . ----Could I borrow your dictionary?
----Yes, of course you ____ .(92)
- A . might
 - B . will

- C . can
- D . should

11 . Peter ____ come with us tonight , but he isn't very sure yet . (93)

- A . must
- B . can
- C . may
- D . will

12 . Tom ought not to ____ me your secret , but he meant no harm . (93)

- A . have told
- B . tell
- C . be telling
- D . having told

13 . ----Shall I tell John about it?

----No, you ____ . I've told him already . (94)

- A . needn't
- B . wouldn't
- C . mustn't
- D . shouldn't

14 . I told Sally how to get here , but perhaps I ____ for her . (94)

- A . had to write it out
- B . must have written it out
- C . should have written it out
- D . ought to write it out

15 . It's nearly seven o'clock . Jack ____ be here at any moment . (94)

- A . must
- B . need
- C . should
- D . can

解答

一 .

- 1.may 2.Can 3.must 4.must
5.used 6.need 7.ought 8.dare
9.would 10.will 11.should 12.should

二 .

- 1.would
2.used to
3.used to; is used to; shall be used to

三 .

- 1.D 2.B 3.C 4.C 5.C 6.B 7.B
8.D 9.A 10.C 11.C 12.A 13.A 14.C 15.C

第 7 章 动词语气

第 7 章 动词语气

1. 虚拟语气用于条件句 189

2. 虚拟语气在一些从句中的用法 195

语气就是我们常说的说话人说话的口气。在汉语中，语气是由说话人说话的语调、情节等等表现出来的，动词不变。而在英语中，除了语调之外，最主要的是**动词发生变化而表示不同的语气**。这一点和时态变化有相似之处，汉语中通过时间状语的不同来表现时间的不同，动词没有变化。而在英语中，除了时间状语变化外，动词要根据时间不同而变化。（详见初级版时态各章）

在英语中语气分为三类：陈述语气、祈使语气和虚拟语气。

陈述语气：我们把一句话作为对情况的叙述或询问说出来，就用陈述语气，用于陈述句，疑问句和感叹句。日常生活中大多使用这种语气。

祈使语气：我们提出劝告、请求、命令等时，就用祈使语气，用于祈使句。（详见初级版第 18 章）

祈使句主要有二种句型：

句型一 肯定句：动词原形

否定句：Don't+动词原形

Be careful! 小心！当心！

Don't run! 别跑！

句型二 肯定句：Let+宾语+动词原形

否定句：Let+宾语+not+动词原形

Let's go. 让我们走。

Let's not talk about it now. 咱们现在不谈论它。

虚拟语气：如果我们所说的不是事实，也不是要求、命令、劝告等，而只是一种假设、愿望、建议或是一种实现不了的空想，就用虚拟语气。（本章着重讲一下虚拟语气）

1 虚拟语气用于条件句

1 非真实条件句

虚拟语气可用于条件句和其它一些从句中。虚拟语气用于条件句中比较多，情况也比较复杂，所以要特别加以注意，首先要判断一下是否应该用虚拟语气，因为条件句分为两种，一种是真实条件句，一种是非真实条件句，只有在非真实条件句中才用虚拟语气，在真实条件句中，要用陈述语气。为了便于比较，请看下两页所列表格：

真实条件句

从句		主句
现在的条件	现在时	现在时或将来时
	If you heat ice, 如果你给冰加热, If he doesn't hurry up, 如果他不快点儿,	it turns (=will turn) to water. 它就变成水。 he will miss the bus. 他就要误了汽车了。
过去的条件	过去时	过去时或过去将来时
	When he was a child, If he was free, 当他还是孩子的时候, 只要 他有时间, He said that if he had money, 他说, 如果他有钱,	he asked me to tell stories. 他就让我讲故事。 he would buy me a car. 他就会给我买辆小汽车。
将来的条件	用现在时代替将来时	一般将来时或祈使句
	If it doesn't rain tomorrow, 如果明天不下雨, If anybody visits, 如果有人来访,	he will go to the park. 他就去公园。 ask him to wait a while. 请他等一会儿。

如果假设的情况完全不存在或者实现的可能性很小,可以说几乎没有时,就需要用虚拟语气来表示,也就是说,这时的条件句是非真实的条件句。此时的句子时态比真实条件句中的时态后退一步。即:

现在时 过去时 (该用现在时时,用过去时)

过去时 过去完成时 (该用过去时时,用过去完成时)

将来时 过去将来时 (该用将来时时,用过去将来时)

过去将来时 过去将来完成时 (该用过去将来时时,用过去将来完成时)

注意

unless 可代替 if...not... ' 上表例句 If he doesn't hurry up, he will miss the bus. (现在时) 可改为 Unless he hurries up, he will miss the bus.

请参照下页表格

非真实条件句 (以 do 和 be 为例)

从句	主句
用过去时	用过去将来时
与现在事实相反 If + 主语 + $\begin{cases} \text{were} \\ \text{did} \\ \text{were doing} \end{cases}$ If I were you, 如果我是你的话, If there was no air, 如果没有空气,	主语 + $\begin{cases} \text{should / would do} \\ \text{might / could} \end{cases}$ I should / would to at once 我立刻就走。 people would die 人们就会死去。
与过去事实相反 过去完成 If+主语+had done ... If you had been there last night, 如果昨晚你在那儿, If you had got there earlier, 如果你早到一点儿的话,	过去将来完成 主语 + $\begin{cases} \text{should / would have done} \\ \text{might / could} \end{cases}$ nothing wouldn't have happened. 什么事也不会发生。 you would have caught the bus. 你就会赶上那辆公共汽车。
与将来事实相反 过去时 (were to) ; should + V (万一) If + 主语 + $\begin{cases} \text{were} \\ \text{did} \\ \text{were to do} \end{cases}$ If+主语+should+do If it were Sunday tomorrow, 明天要是周日的話, If you were to visit the school tomorrow, 明天你要是参观那所学校, If you should meet him, 万一你要见到他,	过去将来时 主语 + $\begin{cases} \text{should / would do} \\ \text{might / could} \end{cases}$ we wouldn't have an exam 我们就不参加考试了 you would see me 你就会见到我。(明天你肯定不去) you would say "hello" to him please say "hello" to him 请问他好

注意

- 目前，虚拟语气的 were 除了在 If I were you 的结构中不能改动外，其它情况上有时可用 was。
- 在与将来事实相反的条件从句中，三种结构中可能实现的程度有区别。were to do 可能性最小，should+V. 可能性稍大一些。
- 如果表示否定的意思，多用过去时结构，用 should 和 were to 较少。

2 错综时间条件句

有时非真实条件句中，主句谓语动词所表示的动作和条件从句中谓语动词所表示的动作并不同时发生，这时动词的形式并不完全按照上述表格来进行，而需要按照各自的时间来调整，这样的句子就叫错综时间条件句。

比较

If you had followed the doctor's advice(then), you **would be**

all right **now**.

如果你那时听了医生的劝告，你**现在**就好了。

(主句与从句发生的时间不同，应按照主句与从句各自的时间做调整)

If you had followed the doctor's advice, you **would have been** all right **then**.

如果你那时听了医生的劝告，你那时就好了。

(主句与从句发生的时间同时)

If you had watered them more, the crops **would be growing** still better.

如果你再给庄稼多浇些水，它们会长得更好。(指现在长得会更好)

如不调整：

If you had watered them more, the crops would have grown still better.

If I **hadn't finished** my composition by now. I **would be working** on it tomorrow.

如果我现在还没写完作文，我明天就还得写它。

(从句表示与过去事实相反，主句表示与将来事实相反)

注意

错综时间条件句中，要特别注意时间状语，在这种情况下，必须明确给以时间，或通过上下文可明白看出时间不同，否则就按前面表格中一般时间搭配使用。

If he **had prepared** well for his lessons yesterday, he **wouldn't have so** many difficulties **now**.

如果他昨天把功课都(准备好的话)预习好了，他现在不会这么困难。

3 含蓄条件句

有时一个假设的情况并不用条件从句表示，而用其它方式来表示，这样的句子叫含蓄条件句。

1. 用 with, without 等介词短语或分词短语或者独立主格结构来替代条件从句。

We **might have died** without your help.

=We **might have died if you hadn't helped** us.

如果没有你们的帮助，我们早死了。

Having known in time, we **could have stopped** it.

=If we **had known** in time, we **could have stopped** it.

如果我们及时知道的话，我们可能阻止它。

I **had** my hair **cut** off and sold it because I **couldn't have lived** through Christmas without giving you a present.

=if I **hadn't given** you a present.

我剪掉了头发，把它卖了，因为如果我不给你礼物的话，整个圣诞节我都过不好的。

2. 用相当于 if 的其他连词表示虚拟结构

在条件从句中除最常见的连词 if 之外，尚有下列连词：

otherwise 否则，不然.....	in case 假如
but that 要不是.....	on condition(that) 条件是.....
unless 除非	suppose/supposing(that) 假如
so long as 只要	provided/providing(that) 如果.....

I was busy last week, otherwise I **would have come** to see you.
 =I was busy last week. If I **had not been** busy last week, I **would have come** to see you.

上周我很忙，否则（如果我不忙的话）我会去看你的。

Now, Mr.Crossett didn't work. Otherwise (=if this shaking **hadn't begun** two years before,) he **would still be working** because his heart and soul were still in the schoolroom with his various students.

克赛特先生已经不工作了，否则（如果不是两年前他的手开始颤抖的话）他还会工作着的，因为他的整个心灵都溶化在学校的不同学生之中了。

3. 通过上下文来表示虚拟

这种情况下，需要加以分析。

I **would have given** you more money, but I was so poor then.
 那时我应该再多给你些钱，可是我那时很穷。

分析：

这一句实际上省略了一个非真实条件句——如果我那时富或有钱（If I had had more money, or if I were/was rich.）。but（但是）引起的这一句子是真实情况，不是虚拟。这一句如果写全的话，应是 I would have given you more money, if I was rich then. But I was so poor then.

I **would have called** you, but I forgot your telephone number.

=I **would have called** you if I **had known** your telephone number.
But I forgot it.

真实情况

我那时应该给你打电话，（如果我知道你的电话号码）但是我忘了你的电话号码。

4 虚拟条件句中的省略与倒装

符合下列条件，可以省略 if

必须是非真实条件句，真实条件句不可以省略 if

只有当非真实条件句中有 were, had, should, would 等词时，才可以省略 if，把这些词放在主语前。

省略 if 时，主语与 were, had, should 的位置必须相互调换。

If I **should meet** her, I **would tell** her.

=**Should I meet** her, I would tell her.

万一我见到她，我会告诉她的。

If I **were** in your position, I **would do** it better.

=**Were I** in your position, I would do it better.

如果我处在你的位置上，我会做得更好。

If they **had made** preparations, they **would have succeeded**.

=**Had** they made preparations, they would have a succeeded.

如果他们准备了的话，他们应该能成功的。

2 虚拟语气在一些从句中的用法

1 在宾语从句中的用法

1. 在 suggest, insist, order, demand, request, command, propose, desire 等动词后作宾语从句时，表示欲望、建议、命令等时，用虚拟语气。

句型：主语+**should** (可省略) +**动词原形**

注意

在本句型中只能用 should, 不可以用 would, could, might 等别的词代替。另外，在现代英语中，should 常被省略。

The PLA men ordered that all the enemy(**should**) **give up**.

解放军战士们命令所有的敌人都投降。

They requested that the students(**should**)**learn** the second language.

他们要求学生要学第二外语。

He proposes that we(**should**)**work** out a plan first.

他建议我们先订一个计划。

I suggest that we(**should**) **visit** that school.

我建议我们参观那所学校。

The chairman of the meeting insisted that we(**should**)**take up** the problem at the meeting.

会议主席坚决主张我们在会上讨论这个问题。

a. suggest 的用法

suggest 有两种意思：

当“**建议**”解：后面的宾语从句才用虚拟语气。

当“**暗示**”、“**略微透露**”、“**表明**”解：后面的宾语从句不用虚拟语气。

He suggests that she should leave the house at once.

他建议她立刻离开这房子。

His face suggested that he **was angry**.

他的脸色表明他生气了。

The teacher's tone suggested he **didn't care about it**.

老师的语调暗示（表明）他对这件事不关心。

注意

suggest +动名词（不能跟不定式）

He suggested going there at once.

他建议立即去那儿。

b. insist 的用法

insist 和 suggest 一样，有两种意思：

当“坚称说”解，不用虚拟语气。

当“坚决要求”，“硬要”解，它后面的宾语从句才用虚拟语气。

He insisted that he **was innocent**.

他坚称他是无辜的。

He insisted that they **(should) show** him their passports.

=He insisted on their(them)showing him their passports.

他坚决要求他们向他出示护照。

注意

insist on doing sth.

He insisted on his innocence.

他坚称自己是无辜的。

2. 在 wish 后的宾语从句中需要用虚拟语气，而在虚拟语气中时态的应用类似在非真实条件句中从句时态的应用 时态后移

a. 与现在（当时）事实相反的愿望（用过去时）

句型：主语+ wish +从句（主语+过去时...）

I wish I **were** you.

我但愿我是你多好啊。

How I **wish** it **wasn't raining!**

现在要是不下雨该多好啊！（我多么希望现在不下雨。）

b. 与过去事实相反的愿望（用过去完成时）

句型：主语+wish+从句（主语+过去完成时...）

I **wish** I **had learned** more.

我多么希望我以前多学一些啊！

He **wishes** he **hadn't made** the big mistake.

他要不是犯那个大错误，该有多好！

c. 与将来的愿望相反即愿望难以实现（用过去将来时）

句型：主语+wish+从句（过去将来时）

I wish I **could be of more** use in the future.

我希望我将来有点儿用处。

The last chance has been lost. How he wishes he **would have** another chance.

最后一次机会他也失去了，他多么希望他能再有一次机会啊！

比较 比较 wish 与 hope

wish+从句，表示不可能实现的愿望，必须用虚拟语气。

hope+从句，表示可能实现的事实，不能用虚拟语气。

He **hopes** that we **will go** there with him.

他希望我们和他一起去。（有可能实现）

He **wishes** we **would go** there with him.

他多么希望我们和他一起去那儿啊！（可惜实现不了）

注意

wish to do ; wish sb. to do 是属不定式的句型，不是虚拟。

I wish to do it.

我希望去做这件事。

I wish you to do it.

我希望你去做这件事。

2 在主语从句中的用法

用 necessary 等词，表示建议、要求、惊奇等时，要用虚拟语气。

句型：

. It is natural (suggested , necessary , requested , ordered , proposed , important , surprising , strange , funny)+that+主语+should (可省略) +V (动词原形)

. It is a pity (a shame , no wonder , a honour)+that+主语+should (可省略) +动词原形

It is strange that he (should) go himself.

真奇怪，他怎么自己独自去呢？

It is a pity that you (should) miss a good chance.

真遗憾，你失去了这么好的机会。

It has been decided that the sports meet (should) be put off till next month.

已经决定了，把运动会推迟到下个月。

注意

左边这些句子也可以用陈述语气，而不表示情绪。

3 在表语从句和同位语从句中的用法

用 suggestion 等词表示愿望、建议、命令等情绪时，用虚拟语气，从句中用 should (可省略) +动词原形

常用的词有：suggestion , proposal , order , insistence , extraordinary , plan , idea

My suggestion is that we (should) do the experiment again. (表语从句)

我的建议是再做一次试验。

My suggestion that we (should) do the experiment again is accepted by them. (同位语从句)

我的再做一次试验的建议被他们所接纳。

His proposal is that they (should) challenge the other groups to a friendly competition. (表语从句)

他提议(建议)是他们和别的组挑战进行一场友谊竞赛。

His proposal that they (should) challenge the other groups to a friendly competition is praised by the teacher.

他的提议：他们和别的组挑战，来一场友谊竞赛，受到了老师的表扬。

注意

和主语从句一样，如果不表示建议、命令、愿望等情绪，不用虚拟语气，而用陈述语气。

4 在宾语从句中的虚拟语气

It is (was) (high) time that + 主语+ should + V.or

It is (was) (high) time that+主语+过去时

表示该干什么了，而没有干。

此句型中 should 不能省略。

比较

It is time that you should have a class.

=It is time that you had a class.

可该上课了。(早已该上课了,你们为什么不上课?)

It is time(for you) to have a class.

该上课了。(上课的时间到了)(刚刚打铃或马上就要打铃时)

比较

It is (high) time you should leave

=It is (high) time you left

你早就该离开了。(该走了)(可你还没走)

It is time (for you) to leave

你该走了。(提醒)

5 虚拟语气在状语从句中的用法

1. 在目的状语从句中的虚拟

a. that (so that, in order that) + 主语 + may (might) + 动词原形 (为了....., 以便.....) 表肯定目的

主句为现在时或将来时时, 从句用 may。

主句为过去时时, 从句用 might。

so that 除了可引导目的状语从句外, 也可引导纯粹表结果的从句。在从句中通常用 can (could) 或不加助动词。

in order that 只能表示目的, 在三个引导目的状语从句的连词中, 只有它可放在句首。

比较

They got up early so that they might catch up the train. (目的)

=They got up early in order that they could catch up the train. (表目的)

他们早起, 这样就能赶上火车。

They got up early so that they caught up the train. (结果)

比较

他们早起, 结果他们就赶上了火车。

The foreigner spoke slowly in order that (so that) I could (might) understand him. (目的)

这位外国人说得很慢, 好让我能听懂他讲的话。

The foreigner spoke slowly so that I understand him. (in order that 只能表示目的)

这位外国人讲得很慢, 这样我能听懂他所讲的话了。

说明

目的状语从句用 may (might) 比较正式, 但也可用 can (could), will (would), should, 在口语中尤以 can (could) 最常用。

b. lest + 主语 + should + 动词原形 表否定目的 (为了不....., 以免.....)

lest 引导的状语从句可以换成 that, so that, in order that 接否

定动词。

说明

should 在此适用于任何时间，均无改变。在美式英语中 should 可省略。

They got up early lest they **should** miss the train.

= They got up early $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{that} \\ \text{so that} \\ \text{in order that} \end{array} \right.$ they might not miss the train.

他们起得很早，以免误了火车。

2. 在表“感情”状语从句的虚拟

主句	状语从句	虚拟语气	
主句 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} + \text{ be} + \text{ sorry} \\ \text{surprised} \\ \text{disappointed} \end{array} \right.$	+that+主句	should+动词原形	表现在或将来
		should+完成时	表过去

在表愿望、惊奇等情绪的感情状语从句中用虚拟语气。句中的 should 做“竟然，居然”解（在美式英语中 should 常省略）

如果只是陈述一件事情，可以用陈述语气而不用虚拟语气。

I am sorry that he **should fail** in the exam again.

我真难过，他这次考试竟然又没通过。

He is disappointed that he **shouldn't be** chosen this time.

他很失望，他这次竟然没被选上。

I am **sorry** that things **should have come** to this.

我很抱歉事情竟落到这般地步。（that 从句指过去）

3. 以 as if, as though 引导从句，表示“好像”的虚拟

主句	连词	从句	虚拟语气
主句+动词	as if as though	主句+ 过去时或 were	指现在（与现在事实相反）
		过去完成时	指过去（与过去事实相反）
		过去时助动词+动词原形	指将来（与将来事实相反）

在 as if, as though 引导的从句中，如果谈论的是不可能或不真实的情况时，它们所引导的表示虚拟性比喻或方式的状语从句要用虚拟语气。动词形式和 wish 后面的从句中动词形式变化相同（参见 P.194）。

He speaks English as if he **were (was)** an Englishman. **（与现在事实相反）**

他说起英语来好像他是个英国人似的。

You are talking (talk, talked) as if (though) you **had seen** them. **（与过去事实相反）**

你谈得（那么起劲）好像你真见过似的。

They talked about the city as if (though) they **had been** there before. **（与过去事实相反）**

他们谈论那座城市就好像他们以前真去过那儿似的。

He stood up as if (though) he **would speak**. **（与将来事实相反）**

他站起来好像要发言似的。（实际上他不可能发言）

比较 as if (thought) 和 seem(appear)

seem, appear, as if, as though 都是表示“好像”，但前两者与后两者在含义和用法方面均不相同：

seem 和 appear 是叙述事实或近乎事实，要用陈述语气。

as if 和 as though 是指事实上不是但好像是，要用虚拟语气。

He seems (to be) honest. 他好像很诚实。

It seems that he is honest.

He appears (to be) drunk. 他好像喝醉了。

It appears that he is drunk.

注意

在 as if (though) 尤其是在遇到 It seems (appears, looks, sounds, smells 等等动词) as if (though) 之后有时依句意需要，也可用陈述语气，表示说话者认为有可能是事实的事。

There are clouds in the sky, it looks as if it is going to rain.

天空中乌云密布，看起来要下雨。（说话者认为会下雨）

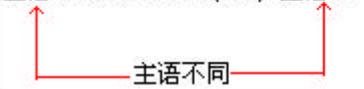
It sounds as if the door bell is ringing.

听起来好像门铃在响。（说话者认为可能是门铃在响）

The speech is dull. It seems as if the speaker is reciting the speech written by someone else.

这个发言枯燥乏味，听起来发言人似乎在背诵别人写的发言稿。

4. would rather (that) + 从句，表示“愿望”的虚拟
参见第3章动词不定式。

主语 A + would rather (that) + 主语 B + 	过去时（指现在或将来，与现在或将来事实相反）
	过去完成时（指过去，与过去事实相反）

I would rather you **had gone** there. （与过去事实相反）
你要是去那里就好了。

I would rather you **stayed** at home now. （与现在事实相反）
你要是现在留在家就好了。

Practice 实力测验

一. 用适当的动词填空（以下都是虚拟语气）

1. If I ___ (be) you, I would not do such a thing.
2. Suppose our teacher couldn't come, who ___ (will) take his place?
3. If he ___ (follow) the doctor's advice, he would not have died.
4. If you ___ (shall 万一) ever see him, please hand him this note.

5. If I ____ (know) her well, I would tell you about her.
6. If she ____ (be) more careful, she wouldn't have made these mistakes.
7. If we ____ (be) there, we could have seen the parade.
8. People would believe my story if I ____ (be) not so young.
9. If I ____ (know) how to ski, I would have joined you.
10. If he ____ (go over) his lessons yesterday, he would pass the exam now.
11. If you had helped him, he ____ (be) happy now.

二. 按要求变换下列句型

1. I am sorry I am not living near your house. I wish ____ .
2. Without your help, I might have failed, If it ____ .
3. If she had smiled, they would have been delighted. Her smile ____ .
4. As he is in poor health, he won't go abroad with us. If he ____ in good health, he ____ abroad with us.
5. I'm sorry she wasn't my girl friend. I wish she ____ my girl friend.
6. He talks like a baby.
He talks as if he ____ a baby.

三. 汉译英

1. 那时候天要好的话, 我就会去钓鱼。(用倒装句)
2. 万一这次我(输了)失败了, 我会等待另外一次机会。(倒装句)
3. 哎, 正是我说再见的时候了。
4. 他肯定病了, 否则他会出席的。
5. 他建议我们换一种方法解这道题。

四. 选择填空(高考题)

1. If my lawyer ____ here last Saturday, he ____ me from going. (89)
 - A. had been; would have prevented
 - B. had been; would prevent
 - C. were; would prevent
 - D. were; would have prevented
2. He ____ you more help, even though he was very busy. (90)
 - A. might have given
 - B. might give
 - C. may have given
 - D. may give
3. If I had worn my overcoat, I ____ cold. (92)
 - A. won't have caught
 - B. couldn't have caught
 - C. won't catch
 - D. wouldn't catch
4. ----If he ____ , he ____ that food.

----Luckily he was sent to the hospital immediately. (93)

- A . was warned; would not take
- B . had been warned; would not have taken
- C . would be warned; had not taken
- D . would have been warned; had not taken

5 . I didn't see your sister at the meeting. If she _____ , she would have met my brother. (94)

- A . has come
- B . did come
- C . came
- D . had come

解答

一.

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1.were | 2.would | 3.had followed |
| 4.should | 5.knew | 6.had been |
| 7.had been | 8.were/was | 9.had known |
| 10.had gone over | 11.would be | |

二.

1. I wish I were(was) living near your house.
2. If it had not been for your help, I might have failed.
3. Her smile would have delighted them.
4. were/was, would go
5. had been
6. was/were

三.

1. Had it been fine then, I would have gone fishing.
2. Should I fail this time, I would wait for another chance.
3. It is high/about time I were/was saying good-bye.
4. He must have been sick; otherwise he would not have been absent.
5. He suggested that we (should) work at the problem in another way.

四.

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1.A | 2.A | 3.B | 4.B | 5.D |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

第 8 章 强调句、语序和倒装

第 8 章	强调句、语序和倒装
1. 强调句	207
2. 语序	210
3. 倒装	211

1 强调句

1 It is (was)...that(who, whom) ...

句型：It is (was) +被强调的成分+that(who, whom) +其它成分

I am right.

我是对的。

It is I who(that) am right. (强调主语)

They will have a meeting tomorrow.

他们明天开会。

It is they who (that) will have a meeting tomorrow. (强调主语)

就是他们明天要开会。

It is a meeting that they will have tomorrow. (强调宾语)

他们明天是要开个会(而不是干别的)。

It is tomorrow that they will have a meeting. (强调时间状语)

就在明天他们要开会。

1. 强调句型应注意事项

a. 强调句中通常强调主语、宾语(包括介词宾语)、状语、短语和从句。it 本身没有词义。

b. 强调句中的连接词一般只用 who, whom(代人), that(可代物, 也可代人), 即使在强调时间状语从句和地点状语从句时也如此。

who, whom, that 不可以省略

c. that 或 who, whom 之后动词的人称和数要与它前面被强调的名词或代词一致。(即人称和数要与原句中的一致)

d. 强调句中的时态只有两种, 一般现在时和一般过去时。原句谓语动词是一般过去时, 过去完成时和过去进行时, 用 It was... 其余的时态用 It is...。

It was the way he asked that really upset me.

就是他问的方式真的使我生气了。

Was it during the Second World War that he died? (强调短语)

他就是在第二次世界大战之中死的吗?

When was it that the Long March started?

是什么时候开始长征的? (强调句子)

2. 强调 it 和先行词 it 的判别

可用恢复原句来判别, 即是把 It is(was)...that 取消, 如果剩下的仍能组成一个完整的句子, 这就是强调句型, 否则就不是。

It is there that accidents often happen.

去掉 It is...that...

There accidents often happen.

那儿经常发生事故。

是一个完整的句子，由此可判断该例是强调句，它强调地点状语 there。

It is clear that not all boys like football.

很明显不是所有的男孩都喜欢踢足球。

去掉 It is...that...

Clear not all boys like football.

不是一个完整的句子，因此这不是强调句，而是由 it 作先行词引导的一个主语从句。

2 not...until...句型的强调句

句型：It is (was) not until +被强调部分+that+其它成分

He didn't go to bed until (till) ten o'clock.

直到十点，他才睡觉。

It was not until ten o'clock that he went to bed. (强调句)

Regular radio broadcasts didn't begin till (untill) 1920.

直到 1920 年，收音机才开始普遍使用。

(在 1920 年以前收音机没开始使用。)

It was not until 1920 that regular radio broadcasts began. (强调句)

I didn't realize she was a famous film star till (until) she took off her dark glasses.

注意

此句型只用 until，不用 till 但如果不是强调句型，till，untill 可通用。(参见左边 3 个例句)

直到这位大明星把她的墨镜摘下来，我才认出她来。

It was not until she took off her dark glasses that I realized she was a famous film star. (强调句)

注意

因为句型中 It(was) is not...已经是否定句了，that 后面的从句要用肯定句，切勿再用否定句了。

1. 此句型还可用倒装句来表示

原句：

Li Ming didn't watch TV till(until) he finished his homework.

李明做完作业后才看电视。

强调句：

It was not until Li Ming finished his homework that he watched TV.

倒装句：

=Not until he finished his homework did Li Ming watch TV.

=Only when he finished his homework did Li Ming watch TV.

原句：

The bus will not go until (till) all the people get on it.

直到所有的人都上了车，车才开走。

强调句：

It is not until all the people get on it that the bus will go.

倒装句：

Not until all the people get on it will the bus go.

Only when all the people get on it will the bus go.

3 谓语动词的强调

It is (was)...that...结构不能强调谓语，如果需要强调谓语时，用助动词 do 或 did。

Do sit down.

务必请坐。

He did write to you last week.

上周他确实给你写了信。

Do be careful when you cross the street.

过马路时，务必（千万）要小心啊！

I did go to see you when you were in Shanghai.

你在上海时，我确实去看过你。

注意

此种强调只用 do 和 did，没有别的形式。

过去时用 did，后面的谓语动词用原形。

2 语序

1 定语从句

在英语中一般常见的句子语序为**主语+谓语+宾语**，此语序与汉语基本相同，但定语在句中的位置中文和英文略有差异，说明如下：

1. 当定语是单词或动名词时

在英语中多将定语放在被修饰词的前面，与汉语相同。

He is a **naughty** boy. (形容词)

他是个淘气的小孩。

2. 当定语是短语（介词短语、分词短语、不定式短语时）或定语从句时

放在所修饰词的后面。

She had a basket **full of apples**. (短语)

她有一个篮子，里面装满了苹果。

The boy **who is sleeping** is my brother. (定语从句)

正在睡觉的小孩是我弟弟。

The students **in the room** are from Asia. (介词短语)

这间房子里的学生们来自亚洲。

3. 当定语是副词或某些过去分词时

放在所修饰词的后面。

The women **here** are for you. (副词)

这儿的妇女都支持你。

I like the books **written by him**. (过去分词)

我喜欢他写的书。

2 状语的语序

状语：地点 时间

在句子中如果同时有时间状语和地点状语，先地点后时间，和汉语语序不同，汉语是先时间后地点。

My mother has lunch **at the factory at noon.**

我妈妈中午在工厂里吃饭。

3 倒装

主语和谓语的顺序分为两种：

1. 自然语序：主语+谓语

2. 倒装语序：谓语+主语

倒装语序又分为部分倒装和全部倒装两种。

部分倒装：谓语中的一部分（如助动词、情态动词或系动词 be）放在主语前面，其余部分仍在主语后面。例：

Only in this way **can we** work out the physics problem.（情态动词）

只有用这种方法，我们才能解出这道物理题来。

Never had he **had** any experience like that.（助动词）

他从来没经历过这样的事。

Not only **is** he a singer, but (also) he is a dancer.

他不仅是一位歌唱家，而且还是位舞蹈家。

全部倒装：句子中没有助动词、情态动词或系动词 be 时，要所谓谓语动词放在主语的前面。例：

Here comes the bus. 汽车来了。

Up went the arrow into the sky.

嗖的一下子箭射上了天。

The door opened and **in came a group** of soldiers.

门一开，一群士兵闯了进来。

注意这时如果主语是人称代词，则主谓不倒装。

Here **he comes**. 他来了。

Away **they went**. 一下子他们就走了。

Here **you are**. 给你。

Here **we are**. 我们到了。

英语中，从形式上分为部分倒装和全部倒装，我们为了便于理解，还可以把它分为语法性倒装，这是由于语法上的需要而必须倒装的句子，还有一种是修饰性的倒装，顾名思义，这些句子如果不是特意加以强调，可以不必倒装。

1 语法性的倒装

1. 各种问句需要倒装

Are you against the plan?

你反对这项计划吗？

What **do** you like best?

你最喜欢什么？

2. there be 句型中，主谓必须倒装

在此句型中，主语总是在谓语之后，无论是在陈述句中还是疑句中。

There **were** no schools or hospital there before.

以前那里既没有学校，也没有医院。

Is there any ink in the bottle?

瓶子里有墨水吗？

3. 引起直接引语的句子，它的主、谓语常倒装

但当主语是代词或谓语含有助动词时，一般不倒装。

另外，如果谓语比主语长，或是它后面有宾语时，一般也不倒装。

“Will you please carry it for me?” **said** the old man.

“劳驾，帮我搬一下好吗？”老人说。

“Please do me a favour,” he **said**.

“请帮助我。”他说。（主语是代词时常不倒装）

“He is a liar. You can't trust him,” Tom **said** to me in a whisper.

“他爱说谎，你别相信他。”汤姆小声告诉我。

“I am hungry,” she **had** **said**.

“我饿了。”她说。（有助动词 had，所以不倒装。）

4. 在省略 if 的虚拟语气条件句中

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Were} \\ \text{Should} \\ \text{Had} \end{array} \right\} + \text{主语} \dots = \text{If} + \text{主语} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{were} \\ \text{should} \\ \text{had} \end{array} \right\} \dots$$

（详见 P. 194 虚拟条件句中的省略与倒装）

当 if 在 were, should 和 had 这些词前面被省略时，要倒装。

Were you a fish, the cat would eat you.

=If you were a fish, the cat would eat you.

假如你是鱼，猫会吃你。

Should it rain tomorrow, I shall stay at home.

=If it should rain tomorrow, I shall stay at home.

如果明天下雨，我将留在家里。

Had you my troubles, you would despair.

=If you had my troubles, you would despair.

如果你遭遇到我的困难，你会绝望的。

5. nor, neither, so 用于句首时主谓语需倒装

当一个句子用 so, nor, neither 开始，说明前面一句话中谓语表示的情况也适用于另外一个或一些人或物时，句子要倒装。

注意

倒装句中的助动词、情态动词、系动词 be 等要和前面一句话中的一致，详见左例。

I have had my breakfast.

我吃早餐了。

So have I.

我也吃了。

so: 用于肯定句，表示“也”。

nor 和 neither : 用于否定句, 表示“也不; 也没有”。

Li Ming can speak three languages.

李明会三种语言。

So can I.

我也会(三种)。

Will you go home this weekend?

这个周末你回家吗?

No, and **neither will Li Ming.**

不回, 李明也不回。

After that we never saw her again, **nor did we** hear from her.

从那以后, 我们就再没有看到她, 也没收到她的信。

6. as 引导的让步状语从句中

adj
n (不带冠词) } + as + 主语 + 系动词 be, 主语 + 动词

adv
V } + as + 主语 + 动词, 主语 + 动词

分别叙述如下:

a. adj+as+主语+系动词 be

Young as he is, he knows a lot of things.

= Although (Though) he is young, he knows a lot of things.

= He is young but he knows a lot of things.

虽然他年龄不大, 可知道的事情很多。

Hard as steel is, it will bend or break under the action of a strong force.

钢虽很硬, 但在强力作用下也会弯曲或断裂。

b. n (不带冠词) +as+主语+系动词 be

注意

在此句型中, 句首的单数可数名词前面不用冠词。

King as he is, he is unhappy.

= Although (Though) he is a king, he is unhappy.

= He is a king, but he is unhappy.

虽然他是个国王, 可是他并不快乐。

Scientist as she is, she wants to learn more.

= Although she is a scientist, she wants to learn more.

虽然她已经是位科学家了, 她还是想继续学更多东西。

c. adv+as+主语+动词

Much as I like it, I won't buy it.

= Although (Though) I like it, I won't buy it.

= I like it, I won't buy it.

虽然我很喜欢它, 但我还是不买它。

Fast as you run, you can't catch up with him.

尽管你跑得很快, 你也赶不上他。

d. V+as+主语+助动词

Try as she does, she will never pass it.
= Although she tries, she will never pass it.
= She tries but she will never pass it.

无论她怎样努力，她也不会通过的。

Search as they would. they could find no sign of the boy.
无论他们怎么寻找，也未能发现那个男孩的踪影。

2 修辞性的倒装

除了语法性倒装之外，有些倒装是由于修辞的原因而采用的，叫做修辞性倒装。

1. 否定词放在字首的倒装

否定词 + {助动词
be动词} + 主语

常见放在句首的否定词

barely	}	绝不
by no means		
in no case		
in no way		
on no consideration		
under no circumstances		
in no circumstances		
never 从不		
no sooner... (than) 一.....就.....		
not 不，没有		
not a bit 一点也不		
not only...but also... 不但.....而且		
not...until... 直到.....才		
nowhere 没有地方		
hardly	}	几乎不
scarcely		
rarely	}	很少
seldom		

little 几乎没有；一点也不

说明

little 置于 know, think, imagine, guess, dream, expect, reactive 等有关思考、意识的动词前面时，little=not at all，译为一点也不。

Barely does he have enough money to live on.
= He barely has enough money to live on.
他几乎没有足够的钱为生。

By no means is translation easy.

= Translation is by no means easy.

翻译绝不是一件简单的事。

Little did I think that I would lose the game.

= I didn't think at all that I would lost the game.

我根本没想到我会输掉这场比赛。

在上面表格所列的否定词中，有几个词是强调两个动作的紧密相接，特别依序说明如下：

a . hardly...when... 一.....就.....

Hardly did he see me when he ran away.

= As soon as he saw me, he ran away.

b . scarcely...when... 一.....就.....

Scarcely had the baby cried when the nurse rushed to carry him.

= The nurse rushed to carry him as soon as the baby cried.

婴儿一哭保姆就赶快去抱他。

c . no sooner...than... 一.....就.....

No sooner had they reached home than it rained.

= It rained as soon as they reached home.

他们一到家就下起雨来了。

d . not only...but also... 不但.....而且.....

注意

. not only...but also...如果连接两个句子，则第一个句子倒装，第二个句子不倒装，见左例。

. Not only...but also...如果强调的是主语，句子则不倒装。

Not only I (is invited) but also my younger sister is invited.

不但我而且我妹妹也被邀请了。

Not only did I make promise, but I also kept it.

= I not only made a promise, but (also) I also kept it.

我不但许下诺言，我也（遵守）实现了诺言。

Not only is he a scientist, but also he is a painter.

He is not only a scientist, but also (he is) a painter.

他不仅是位科学家，而且还是位画家。

2 . 副词（短语）的倒装

用 here, then, now, thus, such, there, so, only then, no longer 等副词为首的句子中，要倒装表示特别强调的语气。

Then came the time we had been looking forward to.

=The time we had been looking forward to came then.

我们一直盼望的时刻终于来到了。

Summer begins in June. Then come July and August.

= Summer begins in June. July and August come then.

夏天自六月开始，然后就是七月和八月。

Here are some ideas which will help you to overcome the difficulties.

以下是一些想法，它们可以帮助你们克服一些困难。

比较

He was very angry. **Not a word** did he say.

他非常生气，一句话也没说。

(强调一句话也没说。)

He was very angry. He didn't say a word. (语气平淡)

比较

Never again shall I be late for school.

我上学再也不迟到了。

I shall never be late for school.

3 . Only+副词放在句首时，要倒装

Only + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{副词} \\ \text{副词短语} \\ \text{状语从句} \end{array} \right\} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{助动词} \\ \text{be} \end{array} \right\} + \text{主语}$

比较

Only then **did I realize** I made such a big mistake.

只是在那时，我才认识到我犯了一个多么大的错误。

I realized I made such a big mistake only then.

Only in this way **can you** work it out.

= You can work it out only in this way.

只有用这种方法你才能算出这道题来。

Only when one loses health **does one know** its value.

只有当人们身体不好时才认识到身体（好的重要性）的价值。

Only when he got home **did he know** what happened to his father.

= When he got home he knew what happened to his father.

当他到了家之后，他才知道父亲发生了什么事。

注意

only 放在句首时，如果强调的是词或一个短语（即 only 引导的是一个简单句）则需要倒装。如果 only 后强调的是句子（即整个句子是一个主从复合句），那么从句不倒装，主句倒装。见左二例。

only 如果强调的是主语时，也不倒装。

Only his mother was invited.

只有她妈妈被邀请了。

4 . 频度副词在句首时须倒装

频度副词 always, often, once 出现在句首时，句子要倒装

Often did we warn them not to do so.

= We often warned them not to do so.

我们曾多次警告他们不要这样做。

Always will we remember the importance of meeting.

= We will always remember the importance of the meeting.

我们将永远记住这次会议的重要性。

一. 选择填空

1. ----Will you go home this weekend?
----No, and _____. (85)
A. neither Li Ming will
B. Li Ming won't too
C. neither will Li Ming
D. so won't Li Ming
2. After that we never saw her again, nor _____ from her. (87)
A. did we hear
B. we heard
C. had we heard
D. we have heard
3. ----I like swimming in winter.
---- _____(87)
A. so do I.
B. So I do.
C. So do I, too.
D. So I do, too.
4. Was it during the Second World War _____ he died? (88)
A. that B. while C. in which D. then
5. It was the way he asked _____ really upset me. (88)
A. that B. so C. therefore D. so that
6. It was not _____ she took off her dark glasses _____ I realized she was a famous film star. (82)
A. when; that
B. until; that
C. until; when
D. when; then
7. It was not until 1920 _____ regular radio broadcasts began.
A. while B. when C. that D. since
8. _____, he never spends a cent on charity.
A. Rich as is he
B. Rich as he is
C. He is as rich
D. Though rich he is
9. _____ engaged in my present work, I would be quite willing to do what you ask me to.
A. Were I not
B. Was I not
C. Would I not be
D. Had I not been
10. Only on Sundays _____ watch TV.
A. he can B. can he
C. he does D. does he

解答

一.

1. C	2. A	3. A	4. A	5. A
6. B	7. C	8. B	9. A	10. B

第 9 章 名词从句

第 9 章 名词从句

- 1. 主语从句 221
- 2. 表语从句 224
- 3. 宾语从句 225
- 4. 同位语从句 232
- 5. 名词从句中应注意事项 233

名词从句和名词一样，在句中可担任主语、表语、宾语（动词宾语和介词宾语）和同位语。

名词从句包括主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句和同位语从句。

1 主语从句

在句子中担当主语的是一个从句，这个从句就叫作主语从句。主语从句可以由下列连词、连接代词和连接副词引导，且不能省略。

连词 that, whether

连接代词 what, whatever, who, whoever 等

连接副词 when, where, how, why

另外在主语从句中主句的动词大多用 be 动词或其它系动词。

1 由连词 that, whether 引导的主语从句

It is certain that he will come. 他一定会来。

形式主语 主语从句

Whether he will come is doubtful. 他是否会来还不知道。

连词 that, whether 在主语从句中的作用只是引导主语从句，它在从句中不担任成分，不能省略，且由它们引导的主语从句，多用 it 作形式主语。

注意

表示“是否”时只能用 whether，不能用 if 代替它。

That the earth is round is true.

地球是圆的，是一个事实。

说明：

that 是连词，引导主语从句 That the earth is round.

that 在从句中不担任成分。

that 不能省略，如省略了它，就不是从句了，而且一个简单句了：

The earth is round. 。

that 本身没有词义。

由 that 引导的主语从句常写为：

It is true that the earth is round

形式主语 真正主语（从句）

Whether he'll come (or not) hasn't been decided.

主语从句

合成谓语

他是否来还没定下来。

注意

主语从句的时态不受主句的限制，如左例。

说明：

whether 引导主语从句。

whether 不担任成分。

whether 不能省略，省略了它，这个从句就变成一个简单句了：

He will come.

whether 当“是否”讲。

此种句子常写成：

It hasn't been decided whether he'll come or not.

形式主语

真正主语（从句）

It is a fact that English is being accepted as an international language.

= That English is being accepted as an international

（从句）现在进行时被动语态

language is a fact.

（主句）一般现在时

英语正在用来作为一种国际语言，这是一个事实。

注意

whether 引导主语从句时，不能用 if 代替。

If he'll come hasn't been decided. (×)

It hasn't been decided if he'll come. (×)

2 由连接代词或连接副词引导的主语从句

When the meeting will be held has not been announced.

会议什么时候举行尚未宣布。

连接代词 who, which 和连接副词 when, where, how, why 都可以引导主语从句，它们分别在从句中担任主语、宾语和状语，不能省略，注意翻译时，不能把它们译为疑问句。由它们引导的主语从句，也可以用形式主语 it 引导。

如果句子是疑问形式，则必须用“it”的结构。

Who let out the news remained unknown.

= It remained unknown who let out the news.

谁泄露了那个消息仍旧无人知道。

（who 是连接代词，在主语从句中作主语，又引导了主语从句，不能省略。翻译时不能把它译为问句 Who let out the news? 谁泄露了那个消息？）

Which (answer) is right isn't known to us.

= It isn't known to us which (answer) is right.

哪一个答案是对的我们还不知道。

When we'll start is not clear.

= It is not clear when we'll start.

我们何时出发还不清楚。

Why he didn't come here is not clear to anyone.

= It is not clear to anyone why he didn't come.

他为什么没来我们大家都不知道。

How this happened is still a question.

这事情是怎么（如何）发生的仍然是个问题。

（How 是连接副词，在从句中作状语，不能省略。）

比较

由连接代词和连接副词引导的主语从句和疑问句不同，它的语序是正常语序（陈述语序）。

疑问句 **Why** didn't he come here?（他为什么不来这儿？）

疑问副词

主语从句 **Why** he didn't come here,（为什么他没来这儿，.....）

连接副词

3 以关系代词 what, whatever, whoever...引导的主语从句

what 有时可用来表示 the thing which 这种意思，引起从句，表示一样东西或一件事情。

who, whom, which, what, 可以和 ever 构成合成词，和 what 一样引导从句，ever 起强调作用。

此类主语从句不能用形式主语 it 引导，它们在句子中担任成分，不能省略，语序为陈述语序。

What he said at the meeting is important.

= 定语从句：

说明

what=the thing that

The thing that he said at the meeting is important.

他在会上所说的（事情）是重要的。

（what 在从句中作宾语，不能省略，语序为陈述，语序不能用疑问句语序：What did he say at the meeting?他在会上说什么了？）

Whoever leaves the office should tell me.

=定语从句

Any one who leaves the office should tell me.

无论是谁离开办公室都应该告诉我。

说明

whoever = any one who

（whoever 在从句中作主语，不能省略。）

Whenever the Olympic Games will be held in Beijing is not known yet.

（whenever 在从句中作时间状语。不能省略注意语序。）

必背！

whoever = any one who whoever = no matter who 无论是谁

whomever = any one whom whomever = no matter whom 无论是谁

whosever = any one whose whosever = no matter whose 无论是

谁的

whichever = anything that whichever = no matter which 无论是

哪个

whatever = anything that whatever = no matter what 无论是什

么

what = 先行词+which/that

2 表语从句

引导表语从句的词与引导主语从句的词相同有：

连词：that, whether

连接代词：who, which

连接副词：when, where, how, why 等

关系代词：what, whatever 等，从句的词序为陈述语序。

My idea is **that we'll all go except Lili**

我的想法是我们大家除了莉丽之外都去。

说明

that 是连词，在句中不作成分，没有词义，不可省略（但在口语中有时 that 可省略）。

That's **what we should do.**

这是我们的本份。

说明

what 在从句中作宾语，不能省略，从句中的语序为陈述语序。

The question is **how we can get there.**

问题是我们如何到达那儿。

说明

how 在从句中作状语。不能省略，注意从句用陈述句的语序。

China is no longer **what she used to be.**

what = (the country) China that

今日中国再也不是过去的中国了。

3 宾语从句

在初级版中，我们对宾语从句作了简单的介绍，它使用的连词、连接代词、连接副词、关系代词等与主语从句和表语从句一样，是 that, whether, who, which, when, where, how, why, whoever, what, whatever, whenever ...。

宾语从句与主语从句、表语从句的区别是：

if 可以用于宾语从句中，有时可以和 whether 互换。

that 在宾语从句中作连词时（连接主句与宾语从句）常常被省略，同时由 that 引导的宾语从句常用形式宾语 it 来引导。

同时在本章中我们也将介绍介词宾语从句的用法。

1 陈述句与宾语从句的转换

转换公式

用连词 that 引导宾语从句。

（that 不在从句中担任成分，本身没有词义，可以省略。）

从句语序不变，仍是陈述句的语序。

从句时态与主句一致。

* 也可以用形式宾语 it 表示。

注意

时态变为过去进行时，因为主句是一般过去时。

陈述句：

He is feeling ill.

他觉得不舒服。

宾语从句：

Mike said **that he was feeling ill.**

迈克说他觉得不舒服（有病了）。

陈述句：

We must study hard.

我们必须努力学习。

宾语从句：

All of us know **that we must study hard.**

我们所有的人都知道我们必须努力学习。

（从句的时态没有变化，因为主句的时态是一般现在时，从句的时态可以维持不变。）

We think it (is) quite that all the people ought to

形式宾语 真正的宾语

obey the laws.

我们认为所有的人都应该遵守法律，（这是）非常正确的。

（为了便于理解用 is 连接，但在实际应用中，不加 is）。

They took it for granted **that the heavy objects went down faster than the light ones.**

他们想当然认为重的物体比轻的物体降落得要快。

He made it clear to the poor peasant **that he would make him king if he saved him.**

他让这个贫苦的农民明白，如果他（农民）救了他，他就让他当国王。

Do you consider it necessary **that** he will do it again?

你认为他有必要再做一次吗？

（你认为他再做一次有必要吗？）

2 一般疑问句与宾语从句的转换

转换公式

用 **whether, if** 连接宾语从句。（它们在从句中不担任成分，当“是否”讲，不可以省略）

从句语序要变为陈述语序。

从句时态要与主句一致。

一般疑问句：

Does she live here?

她住在这儿吗？

宾语从句：

He asked me **whether (if) she lived here.**

or He asked me **whether she lived here or not.**

他问我她是否住在这儿。

(因为主句的时态是过去时 asked, 所以从句的时态也要改为过去时)

因为有 or not, 只能用 whether 不能用 if

一般疑问句:

Will the movie star come?

这个影星会来吗?

宾语从句:

I don't know whether/if the movie star will come.

or I don't know whether the movie star will or not.

我不知道这位影星是否会来。

(本句中的主句是一般现在时, 从句保留原来的时态: 一般将来时。)

一般疑问句:

Did he study English 20 years ago?

他是二十年前学的英语吗?

宾语从句:

My mother asked him whether he had studied English 20 years before.

我母亲问他, 他是否在 20 年前学英语。

(本句中的主句是一般过去时, 所以从句中的时态要变为相应的过去的时态, 宾语从句的时态由过去时变为过去完成时。)

3 特殊疑问句与宾语从句的转换

转换公式

保留原来的疑问词(这些疑问词不变, 但它们的语法功能变了, 换作连接代词或连接副词, 它们在宾语从句中担任成分, 不可以省略。)

从句语序要变为陈述语序。

从句时态要与主句一致。

特殊疑问句:

What does he like?

他喜欢什么?

宾语从句:

I wonder what he likes.

我不知道他喜欢什么?

(what 由原来特殊疑问句中的疑问代词变为连接代词, 它把主句和宾语从句连接起来, 同时, 它在从句中担任动词 like 的宾语, 不能省略。语序要变为陈述语气。因为主句的时态是一般现在时, 所以从句的时态保持不变。)

特殊疑问句:

Why did he choose that one?

他为什么选择了那一个?

宾语从句:

She asked me why he had chosen that one?

她问我他为什么选择了那一个。

(why 由特殊疑问句中的疑问副词变为在宾语从句中的连接副词, 它

引导了宾语从句，同时在宾语从句中担任状语，不能省略。语序要变为陈述语气。因为主句的时态是一般过去时态，所以从句的时态也由过去时变为过去完成时。)

Do you remember **how he came?**

你还记得他怎么来的吗？

Yes, I do. He came by car.

记得，他坐小汽车来的。

They want to know **what they can do to help us.**

他们想知道他们能做些什么来帮助我们。

Can you make sure **where Alice has put the gold ring?**

你能确定艾丽思把金戒指放在什么地方了吗？

They have no idea at all **where he has gone.**

我一点也不知道他去哪了。

4 介词宾语从句

I have no idea as to how it is done.

(介词+宾语)

我完全不知道那是如何做的。

介词宾语从句和动词宾语从句一样，但要注意以下几点：

1. 由 that 引导的从句很少作介词的宾语从句，只在 except, in, but, besides, ... 等少数介词后用。

I could say nothing **but that I was sorry.**

我(很)非常抱歉。(我除了说抱歉之外，没什么可说的)

He differed from other people **in that he always looked farther ahead in his work.**

他和别人不同的是他在工作中比别人都看得远些。

Your composition is quite good **except that there are some spelling mistakes.**

你的作文写得相当不错，只是(除了)有几个拼写错误。

My teacher was satisfied **with what I did.**

我的老师为我所做的一切感到满意。

What we should take with us depend **on where we'll stay.**

我们需要随身带什么东西，取决于我们将在什么地方停留。

2. 某些不及物动词后边如果跟宾语从句，常省去介词，如果跟名词作宾语，则介词不能省略。

比较

I don't care **whether he likes me or not.**

我不在乎他是否喜欢我。

I don't care about him.

我不在乎他。

比较

I insist **that you should learn a second language**

我坚持让你学第二语言。(虚拟语气)

I insist on your learning a second language.

3. 某些形容词+介词+宾语从句

在表示知觉、感情等的形容词 sure, afraid, glad, certain 后, 如果跟宾语从句, 则省去介词, 跟名词作宾语, 则不能省略介词。

比较

I am sure **that he'll win.**

I am sure of his winning

我肯定他会赢。

比较

I'm afraid **that I'll be late.**

恐怕我要迟到了。

I'm afraid of being late.

我害怕迟到。

比较

He is glad **that you passed the exam.**

He is glad of your passing the exam.

他为你能通过考试(考试及格)而高兴。

5 宾语从句中需注意事项

1. 宾语从句的时态

宾语从句和其它名词从句不同, 它的时态要受主句的限制, 尤其是主句是一般过去时时。

a. **主句**是现在的时态时(一般现在时, 现在进行时, 现在完成时), **从句**的时态可根据实际情况而定(可以是任意时态)

b. 当**主句**是过去的时态时(一般过去时, 过去进行时), **从句**的时态要变为相应的过去的时态(一般过去时, 过去进行时, 过去未来时和过去完成时)

例句参照本章前面的例句。

2. I don't think...我认为.....不.....

在英语中已成为固定句型, 即否定主句, 而不否定从句。

注意

主句的主语必须是第一人称 I 或 we 时, 才能用这样的句型。(否定主句)

I don't think you are right.

我以为你不对。

I don't believe he'll go, **will he?**

我相信他不会走, 是吗?

I don't think you can do that, **can you?**

我认为你不会干那件事, 是吗?

注意

反意疑问句在该固定句型的用法。

I think he is right, **isn't he?**

我认为他是对的, 他对吗?

必背!

类似 I don't think...的情况的还有当动词是 imagine, believe, suppose 等词时。

3. that 的省略

在对某连接词 and 或 but 所连接的两个作宾语的 that 从句中，第一个宾语从句中的 that 可以省略，而第二个不能省略。

He said (that) he has worked for nearly ten years and that he wants go home.

他说他已经在这儿工作近十年了，并说他想回家了。

说明

当谓语动词含有询问或怀疑之意，如 doubt (怀疑)、not sure (不确定)，则应用 whether/if 引导宾语从句。

而 do not doubt (=believe)和疑问句中的 doubt 用 that 引导宾语从句。

4. I...doubt whether/if... 我怀疑.....是否.....

I don't doubt that... 我毫不怀疑.....

I doubt whether he can speak English.

我怀疑他是否能说英语。

I don't doubt that he can speak English.

我毫不怀疑他是否会说英语。

Do you doubt that he can speak English?

我怀疑他会说英语吗？

I'm sure+that... 我相信.....

I'm not sure+whether/if... 我不确定...是否...

I'm not sure whether/if the news is true.

我不能肯定这消息是否确实。

I'm sure that he can do it well.

我相信他会把这件事做好的。

5. insist 和 suggest 后跟宾语从句

请参照第 3 章动词不定式和第 7 章动词语气。

4 同位语从句

如果担任同位语成分的是一个句子，则这个句子为同位语从句。

同位语从句由连词 that 引导，它在从句中不担任成分，没有词义，但是它不能省略。

与 that 从句同位的名词必须是一个表示事实等的抽象名词，常用的有：

news 消息	idea 想法、主意	belief 信念	doubt 怀疑
fact 事实	rumour 谣言	question 问题	order 命令
hope 希望	thought 想法	reply, answer 回答	...

具体名词如 pen, book 之类不可能跟同位语从句。

从意思上来讲同位语从句所表达的意思，就是与之同位的名词所表达的意思。

The rumour that there'll be the earthquake soon spread
(= The rumour is that there'll be the earthquake.)all over the area.

将要发生地震的谣言很快就在这一地区传开了。

(that 引导的从句是抽象名词 rumour 的同位语从句, that 不能省略)

The idea that we invited him yesterday is quite good.

(=The idea is that we invited him yesterday.)

昨天我们邀请他, 这个主意太好了。

(从意思上讲主语和从句表达的意思同位。that 不作成分, 不能省略。)

比较

同位语从句和宾语从句的比较 (请参照 P . 225 宾语从句)

The idea (that) he told me yesterday is good. (宾语从句)

昨天他告诉我的那个主意太好了。

(这个宾语从句, that 在从句中作宾语, 可以省略)

The idea is that he told me yesterday. (×)

意思上这两句并不等同。

5 名词从句中应注意事项

1 连词 that 用法总结

that 可用于主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句和同位语从句中。在这些从句中它只起连接作用, 在从句中不担任成分, 本身没有词义。

that 引导主语从句时, 往往把从句移到后面, 用形式主语来引导。同样 that 引导宾语从句时, 也常用 it 作形式宾语来引导。(详见前面主语从句和宾语从句部分)

注意

that 在引导宾语从句时可以省略, 引导其它从句时一律不能省略。

2 连接代词和连接副词的用法总结

连接代词 who, whom, whose, which, what 在名词从句中除了起连接作用外, 还在从句中担任主语、宾语、表语等成分。(例句参见本章各部分)

连接副词 (when, where, how, why) 除了起连接作用外, 还在从句中作状语。

连接代词、副词在名词从句中保留其疑问意义, 同时在引导名词从句时, 前面没有先行词。(这一点是与宾语从句区别的一点)

注意

所有的连接代词和副词在名词从句中都不能省略。

3 名词从句的语序和时态

所有的名词从句中的语序都是陈述语序。

主语从句、表语从句、同位语从句中的时态不受主句的限制, 但宾语从句的时态要受主句的限制 (主要是在主句是过去时态时)。

4 在名词从句中的虚拟语气

当主句的谓语表示命令、要求、建议、希望、必要等时, 从句的谓语要用虚拟语气, 即

should + V. (should 可以省略)

(宾语从句中 wish 后的虚拟语气构成例外。)

另外，请特别注意 insist, suggest 后宾语从句的两种形式。（详见第 7 章动词语气，）

5 whether 与 if 在名词从句中

whether 可以用于所有的名词从句中。

if 只用于宾语从句中。

（两者都不能省略）

1. 在引导宾语从句（动词宾语从句）时，whether 和 if 可以互换，但如果出现 or not 则只能用 whether

I don't know whether/if I can come.

= I don't know whether I can come or not.

我不知道我是否能来。

2. 如果宾语从句是否定结构，则用 if，而不用 whether

I don't care if he doesn't show up.

他来不来我都不在乎。

Dinner was almost over when Dan still looking hungry, grinned and asked Dave if he wasn't going to have some bread.

晚饭快吃完时丹（他看上去还没吃饱）笑着问戴维还要不要吃些面包。

3. 介词的宾语从句只能用 whether 引导

We worried about whether he was in good health(or not).

我们担心他的（健康状况）身体是否好。

It all depends on whether the weather looks good.

一切都取决于天气如何。

4. 引导主语从句、表语从句、同位语从句时都用 whether。

The question whether he should come himself or send another one hasn't been decided.（同位语从句）

这个问题——他亲自来还是派别人来还没定下来。

Whether they win is all the same to me.（主语从句）

他们是否赢（是赢是输）对我都（一样）无所谓。

The question is whether you can do it yourself.（表语从句）

问题是你能否能独自做这件事。

注意

如果用形式主语时，whether 和 if 都可以。

It's not clear to me whether/if she likes the present.

她是否喜欢这件礼物对于我来说还不大清楚。

本章的测验并入第 10 章直接引语和间接引语的“实力测验”，请学习第 10 章后，再一起做练习。

第 10 章 直接引语和间接引语

第 10 章 直接引语和间接引语

1. 直接引语和间接引语的形成 237

2. 间接引语和直接引语的应注意事项 241

直接引语：当我们引用别人的话语时，如果引用的是原话，被引用的部分就叫作直接引语。

间接引语：当我们要引用别人的话语时，可以用自己的话把意思转述出来，这转述的别人说话的部分叫作间接引语。

1 直接引语与间接引语的形成

1 直接引语

形成步骤

这时只须将原话放在引号之中，不作任何更动。

没有时态呼应问题。

引用原话前可以用逗号“，”，也可以用冒号“：”，（汉语中多用冒号）。

第二个引号之前，亦即重述的话之末，按其类别放在一个句号（.）或问号（?）等。

注意

引号内直接引语的第一个单词的第一个字母要大写。

She said: “ I like English very much. ”

她说：“我非常喜欢英语。”

The teacher asked, “ Do you like English? ”

老师问：“你们喜欢英语吗？”

Mike asked: “ When will our plane land? ”

迈克问：“我们的飞机何时降落？”

The commander ordered, “ Keep silent. ”

司令员命令道：“保持安静。”

2 间接引语

形成步骤

不要逗号、冒号、引号。

要考虑到人称的变化（人称的变化与汉语是一致的）。

要考虑时态的变化。

要考虑时间状语、地点状语和指示代词的变化。

1. 时态的变化

如果主句的时态是现在的时态（一般现在时、现在进行时、现在完成时）或将来时，间接引语中的时态不变。

如果主句的时态是过去的时态（主句是过去时），间接引语中的时态要变为相应的过去时态（请看下表所表示的时态变化）：

直接引语中的时态	变为间接引语中的时态
一般现在时	一般过去时
一般过去时，现在完成时	过去完成时
过去完成时	过去完成时（不变）
一般将来时	过去将来时
现在进行时	过去进行时
现在完成进行时	过去完成进行时
shall	should
should	should（不变）
will	would
would	would（不变）
may	might
might	might（不变）
can	could
could	could（不变）

He said, "I **am** not your friend."

他说：“我不是你的朋友”。

He said that he **was** not my friend.

他说他不是我的朋友。

He said, "Your young brother **broke** it."

他说：“你的小弟弟打破那东西”。

He said that my young brother **had broken** it.

他说我的小弟弟打破那东西。 He said, "I **have lived** in Beijing since 1950."

他说：“我从1950年起就住在北京了”。

He said that he **had lived** in Beijing since 1950.

他说他自1950年起就住在北京了。

2. 时间状语、地点状语和指示代词的变化

另外，间接引语中的时间状语、地点状语和指示代词都有相应的变化，请看下表：

直接引语中状语、指示代词	间接引语中的状语、指示代词
today 今天	that day (yesterday, today) 当天
yesterday 昨天	the day before
tomorrow 明天	the next day/the following day 隔日
next week/year, month	the next week/year, month ...
last week/year, month	the week/year ... Before
ago 以前	before 以前
three/four ... years ago	three/four years before
now 现在	then 那时
here	there
so far 目前	by then 到那时
in 1980	in 1980 (不变)
this 这	that 那
these 这些	those 那些

3. 引用的句子是陈述句和疑问句时

此时间接引语在多数情况下都构成一个宾语从句，当然更需要注意人称及状语的变化（见上述两个表）。

She said to me, "I like English very much."

她告诉我：“我非常喜欢英语。”

She said (that) she liked English very much.

她说她非常喜欢英语。

The teacher asked me, "Do you like English?"

老师问我：“你是否喜欢英文。” The teacher asked me if I liked English.

老师问我我是否喜欢英语。

Mike asked me, "When their plane would land?"

迈克问我：“他们的飞机何时降落？”

Mike asked me when their plane would land.

迈克问我他们的飞机何时降落。

4. 引用的句子是个祈使句

此时间接引语改用不定式表示。

主句动词根据意思可以用 ask, want, tell, order, promise...表示，而原祈使句改为不定式，句型如下：

肯定句：tell (ask...) sb. to do sth.

否定句：tell (ask...) sb. not to do sth.

直接引语：The commander ordered: "Keep silent!"

司令员命令：“安静！”

间接引语：The commander ordered the soldiers to keep silent.

司令员命令士兵们保持沉默。

直接引语：The teacher said: "Don't be late again."

老师说：“别再迟到了。”

间接引语：The teacher told the students not to be late again.

老师告诉同学们别再迟到了。

5. 引用的句子是感叹句时

可以仍然使用 how, what 等词, 语序不变, 也可使用 that 把它改为宾语从句。主要动词 say 可改为 cry, shout。

直接引语: We said, "What a clever monkey it is!"

我们说: "多么聪明的猴子啊!"

间接引语: We said **what** a clever monkey it was.

间接引语: We said **that** it was a clever monkey.

直接引语: He said, "How happy I am!"

他说: "我多么高兴啊!"

间接引语: He said **that** he was very happy.

间接引语: He cried **how** happy he was.

说明

感叹句变为间接引语时, 可以加上适当的修饰语, 如 with delight, with a sigh 等。

He said, "Hurrah! our team has won."

He cried **with delight** that his team had won.

2 间接引语和直接引语的应注意事项

直接引语: "Does the moon move round the earth, Mr. Li?" asked Mike.

迈克问: "李先生, 月亮是围绕着地球转吗?"

间接引语: Mike asked Mr. Li **if/whether the moon moves round the earth**

迈克问李先生月亮是否围绕着地球转。

在此句中, The moon moves round the earth. 是个真理, 所以时态不变。

1 间接引语中时态仍不改变情况

有时主句的动词是过去的时态, 但间接引语中的时态仍不变:

1. 表示一般真理时

间接引语中时态不变(用一般现在时)。

直接引语: He asked, "Which star is the biggest?"

他问: "哪颗星星最大?"

间接引语: He **asked which star is the biggest**

他问哪颗星星最大?

2. 强调动作或状态现在仍然存在时

时态可不变, 其它的相应的状语也可不变, 尤其是在口语中。

直接引语: Just now John said: "My son is ill today."

约翰刚刚说: "我的儿子今天生病了。"

间接引语: John told me just now that his son is ill today.

约翰刚才告诉我, 他儿子今天病了。

[这里间接引语的时态没变, 时间状语没变, 仍是 today (因为今天还没有过去)。]

如果没有特定的情况, 说明是 (today) 今天发生的事, 这句应改

为：

John told me **that his son was ill that** day/yesterday.

约翰告诉我他的儿子那天/昨天病了。

直接引语：He asked: "Where has Li Ming gone?"

他问：“李明去哪儿了？”

间接引语：He asked **where Li Ming had gone**

他问李明去哪儿了。（李明已回来）

但是如果此时李明还未回来，此句应写为：

He asked where Li Ming **has gone**

3. 过去完成时在间接引语中仍为过去完成时，与之联系使用的动词过去时不变。

直接引语：“Another new hospital **had been built** when I went back to my home town last year,” he said.

他说：“去年我回到家乡时另一所新的医院已经建成。”

间接引语：He said that another new hospital **had been built** when he went back to his home town the year before.

他说上一年他回到家乡时，那里又建起了一所新医院。

4. 如果直接引语中一般过去时与表示过去特定时间的状语连用时，间接引语的时态不变。

直接引语：Li Ming said: "I **was born** in 1946 and **joined** the army in 1966."

李明说：“我是1946年出生，并于1966年参军。”

间接引语：Li Ming said that he **was born** in 1946 and **joined** the army in 1966.

李明说他是1946年出生并于1966年参军。

2 人称的变化

从直接引语变为间接引语时，人称代词的人称要发生变化，使其与动词的人称一致，但当主句的动词的主语是第一人称时，引语中的人称代词不变。

直接引语：I said: "You did quite well yesterday."

我说：“你昨天做得相当不错。”

间接引语：I said that you had done quite well the day before.

我说你那天做得相当不错。

直接引语：We say, "They are all right."

我们说：“他们不错。”

间接引语：We say that they are all right.

我们说他们不错。

3 主句动词的使用

用间接引语时，主句动词除了用 say, tell, ask 外，只要意思上允许，尽可能用别的动词如：

admit 承认

agree 同意

greet 打招呼

reply 回答

request 要求

order 命令

wonder

promise 答应

explain 解释

不知道，想知道

declare 声明

直接引语：“Really, that is my fault,” he said.

他说：“的确，那是我的错。”

间接引语：He admitted that it was really his fault.

他承认这的确是他的错。

4 要保存情态动词的意义

注意间接引语中要保存原来直接引语中包含的情态动词的意义。

直接引语：“I must do it now,” said Tom.

汤姆说：“我现在必须做那件事。”

间接引语：Tom said that he had to do it then.

汤姆说那时他必须做那件事。

5 否定的一般疑问句的变化

把否定的一般疑问句变为间接引语时，用 whether...or not.

直接引语：He said, “Don't you know I'm one of you?”

他说：“你难道不知道我是你们中的一员吗？”

间接引语：He asked (us) **whether** we know he was one of us **or not**.

他问我们是否我们知道他是我们中的一员。

6 “Would you please...?” 如何变为间接引语

Would you please...?虽然是个一般疑问句，但它表示的是请求。若要写成表示“请求、劝告、建议”等意义的一般疑问句的间接引语的形式，只要把人称作相应变化，同时把 would 和 please 去掉，如下：

主语+ask (invite)+宾语+不定式。

直接引语：“Would you like to have lunch with me tomorrow?” he asked.

他问：“明天你和我一起吃饭好吗？”

间接引语：He asked (invited) me **to have lunch with him the next day**

他请我明天和他一起吃饭。

直接引语：“Would you please pass me your dictionary?” she said to me.

她跟我说：“劳驾你能把你的字典递给我吗？”

间接引语：She asked me **to pass her my dictionary**

她让我把我的字典递给她。

Practice 实力测验

一. 选择填空

1. I don't think the question of ____ they are old or young is important. (87)

- A. which B. whether
C. how D. why

2. ____ leaves the room last ought to turn off the light. (87)

- A. Anyone B. The person
C. Whoever D. Who

3. They want to know ____ do to help us.(88)
 A. what can they B. how they can
 C. what they can D. how can they.
4. These photographs will show you _____.(89)
 A. what does our village look like B. what our village looks like
 C. how does our village look like D. how our village looks like
5. Can you make sure ____ the gold ring?(90)
 A. where Alice has put B. where had Alice put
 C. where Alice had put D. where has Alice put
6. ____ the Olympic Games will be held in Beijing is not known yet.(92)
 A. Whenever B. If
 C. Whether D. That
7. ____ he said at the meeting astonished everybody present.(93)
 A. What B. That
 C. The fact D. The matter
8. Go and get your coat. It's ____ you left it.(92)
 A. there B. where
 C. there where D. where there
9. I remember ____ this used to be a quiet village.(93)
 A. when B. how
 C. where D. what
10. No one can be sure ____ in a million years.(91)
 A. what man will look like B. what will man look like
 C. man will look like what D. what look will man like
11. He asked ____ for the violin.(92)
 A. did I pay how much B. I paid how much
 C. how much did I pay D. how much I paid
12. ----Do you remember ____ he came?
 ----Yes, I do. He came by car.(94)
 A. how B. when
 C. that D. if
13. ____ is a fact that English is being accepted as an international language.(95)
 A. There B. This
 C. That D. It
14. You can't imagine ____ when they received these nice Christmas presents.
 A. how they were excited B. how excited they were
 C. how excited were they D. they were how excited

二. 直接引语和间接引语互换

1. "My parents are very well," said Tom.
2. "Are you going to learn English?" asked Tom.
3. "I have given up smoking," said my brother.
4. He said: "I can't go to the party tomorrow."
5. The old man said: "I don't know where to go."
6. He said: "I'll tell Ann I saw you."
7. He asked the boy: "Who are you?"
8. She asked: "What's wrong with you?"
9. The doctor said: "Stay in bed for few days."
10. Father said: "Don't shout!"
11. Tom said: "I woke up feeling ill, so I didn't go to work."
12. Mike said: "I have been to America twice. I went there in 1980 and in 1986."
13. She said: "By 9 o'clock last night I'd finished my homework."
14. He asked, "Tom, where did you read it?"
15. He asked: "Why are you smiling?"
16. She asked: "It's a beautiful doing, isn't it?"
17. The child always asks her mother: "Am I a good girl?"

三. 汉译英

1. 我不知道他是否及格了。
2. 他是否及格了还不知道。
3. 这个地区是否要再建一所学校这个问题我们还没决定。
4. 你所告诉我的是非常重要的。
5. 我把你告诉我的记住了。
6. 这就是我想要告诉他的。
7. 我认为明天不会下雨。
8. 我们认为会议不必延期。
9. 我怀疑这篇小说是否值得一看。
10. 我不能肯定你是否对。
11. 学生们坚决主张那个孩子得受惩罚。
12. 他坚决认为他自己什么错事也没干过。

解答

一.

- 1.B 2.C 3.C 4.B 5.A 6.A 7.A
8.B 9.A 10.A 11.D 12.A 13.D 14.B

二.

1. Tom said (that) his parents were very well.
2. Tom asked me whether/if I was going to learn English.
or: Tom asked her whether/if she was going to learn English.
3. My brother said (that) he had given up smoking.
4. He said (that) he couldn't go to the party the next day.
5. The old man said (that) he didn't know where to go.
6. He said to me that he would tell Ann he had seen me.

or (He said to me that he'd tell Ann he saw me.)

7. He asked the boy who he was.

8. She asked I what was wrong with me. (What's wrong with somebody?和 What's the matter with somebody?变为间接引语时, 语序不变。)

9. The doctor told me/her/him...to stay in bed for a few days.

10. Father warned his son not to shout.

11. Tom said (that) he woke up feeling ill so he didn't go to work.

or: Tom said (that) he had woken up feeling ill, so he hadn't gone to work.

12. Mike said (that) he had been to America twice. He went there in 1980 and in 1986.

13. She said (that) by 9 o'clock the night before she had finished her homework.

14. He asked Tom where he had read it.

15. He asked me (He wondered) why I was smiling.

16. She asked me whether/if it was a beautiful day.

17. The child always asks her mother whether/if she is a good girl.

三 .

1. I don't know whether/if he has passed it.

2. It is unknown whether he has passed it.

3. We haven't settled the question of whether another new school will be built (or not)in this district.

4. What you have told me (told me) is very important.

5. I have keep what you told me in mind.

6. This is what I want to tell him.

7. I don't think it is going to rain tomorrow.

8. We don't think the meeting should be put off.

or: We don't think it necessary to put off the meeting.

9. I doubt whether/if this novel is worth reading.

10. I'm not sure whether/if you are right.

11. The students insisted that the boy (should) be punished.

12. He insisted that he did nothing wrong.

第 11 章 定语从句

第 11 章	定语从句
1. 先行词和关系词	251
2. 定语从句的种类	253
3. 关系代词如何引导定语从句	255
4. 各种关系代词的使用方法	259
5. 关系代词与介词·关系代词的省略	265
6. 非限定性定语从句中的关系代词	267
7. 关系副词的定义与用法	268
8. as 引导的定语从句	271
9. 定语从句中需注意事项	273
10. 定语从句和同位语从句的区别	274

定语可以由形容词、代词、数词、名词、分词、副词、不定式、介词短语等来担任，如果是一个句子担任定语，那么这个句子就叫做定语从句，因为主要由形容词担任定语，所以也可以称它为形容词性从句。

定语从句可以修饰名词或代词，还能修饰整个主句或主句的一部分。

例：The **man who (that) came first** is Mike.

↑ 修饰名词 man

第一个来的人是迈克。

The **towel which (that) you gave me** wasn't clean.

↑ 修饰名词 towel

你给我的毛巾不干净。

My father does morning exercises every day, which is good for his health.

↑ 修饰整个句子

我父亲每天做早操，这点对他的身体有好处。

This is the **house where I lived last year.**

↑ 修饰名词 house

这就是我去年住过的房子。

1 先行词和关系词 (关系代词和关系副词的定义与作用)

1 定语从句的构成

A young man **He** liked adventure.

先行词 ↓ 关系词=连词+代词

A young man **who** liked adventure.

修饰先行词 ↑ 定语从句

(爱冒险的青年人)

There was a young man **who** liked adventure.

↑ (有个爱冒险的青年人。)

被定语从句修饰的词叫先行词，引导定语从句的词叫关系词。关系词一般紧跟在先行词之后引导定语从句。定语从句都在它所修饰的先行

词的后面（后置）。（这一点和汉语不同，汉语中的定语都放在被修饰的名词或代词的前面。）

2 关系词的作用

两个简单句

Thank you for the record. + You gave me the record.

主从复合句

先行词 \rightarrow 关系代词 (=连词+代词)
Thank you for the record that/which you gave me.
定语从句

谢谢你给我的录音机。

Thank you for the record that/which you gave me **the record**....

(×)

Thank you for the record that/which you gave **it** to me.... (×)

关系代词起着代词和连词的作用。**关系副词**起着副词或介词短语和连词的作用。

在从句中它们既代替前面的先行词在句子里担任一定的成分，又把两个句子连接起来构成一个带有定语从句的主从复合句。请看上面例句。

说明

关系代词 that/which 紧跟在先行词 record 的后面引导定语从句。关系代词 that/which 在从句中既代替先行词 record 在句子里担任宾语，（该定语从句原应为 You gave me **the record**。）又起着连词的作用把两个简单句连接起来构成一个带有定语从句的主从复合句。

注意

在从句中因为关系代词 that 或 which 已经代替了 record，所以在从句中就不能再重复用它了。

The house **which/that stands on the hill** is mine.

山上的那所房子是我的。

（the house 是先行词，关系代词在从句中作主语，不能省略，引导定语从句 which/that stands on the hill。）

I know the boy **whose parents are dead**.

我认识那个父母亲双亡的小男孩。

（the boy 是先行词，whose 是关系代词，它在从句中担任定语，修饰 parents。）

This is the park **where I lost my wallet**.

这就是我丢失钱包的公园。

（先行词是 the park，关系副词 where 在从句中作地点状语，它相当于副词 there 或介词短语 in the park。）

2 定语从句的种类

定语从句分为限定性和非限定性定语从句

1 限定性定语从句

非限定性定语从句

In their class there are fifteen students, **who can speak English well.**

在他们班上，有十五位学生，他们英语都说得很好。

说明

从句子中可以看出他们班上有十五个学生，这十五位学生英语口语都好。(There are fifteen students in their class.)

限定性定语从句

She has two sons **who are P.L.A. men.**

(Maybe she has other sons who are not P.L.A. men.)

她有两个当解放军的儿子。

(她不止有两个儿子，其余的可能不当兵)

非限定性定语从句

She has two sons, **who are P. L. A. men.**

(She has only two sons. They are both P. L. A. men.)

她有两个儿子，他们都是解放军。

(她只有两个儿子，他们都是解放军。)

3 关系代词如何引导定语从句

1 关系代词和普通代词的区别

I have a sister. **She** works in Shanghai.

↑ 代替 sister

我有一个姐姐。她在上海工作。

The building **which/that stands by the river** is our school.

矗立在河边的这座建筑是我们的学校。

普通代词只起代替作用(如上列 She)

关系代词(如上列 which/that): 除了代替先行词外, 它还在宾语从句中担任一定的成分, 同时它也起连词的作用——把先行词与它所引导的定语从句联系在一起(把主句和从句连接起来)。说明如下:

The building is our school. + The building stands by the river.

(这座建筑是我们学校) (这座建筑矗立在河边)

=The building which/that stands by the river is our school.

先行词 关系代词 (=连词+代词) 从句

(which 或 that 是个关系代词, 它在从句中代替先行词 the building, 同时担任从句中的主语, 也起连词的作用, 把两个简单句连接起来。)

2 先行词和关系代词的种类

先行词	主格	宾格	所有格
人	who,that	whom(who),that	whose
人以外(物)	which,that	which,that	whose,of which

关系代词的使用取决于先行词, 它们的关系非常密切, 因为关系代

词在定语从句中代替主句中的先行词，所以它在一般情况下都跟在先行词之后，而且它的人称、数必须和先行词一致。

The woman **that/who is speaking at the meeting** is

The woman is speaking at the meeting.

(主格) 单数，第三人称、现在进行时。

my mother.

The women **that/who are speaking at the meeting** are

The women are speaking at the meeting.

famous scientists.

译文：正在会议上发言的那位妇女是我妈妈。

正在会议上发言的妇女们是有名的科学家。

说明

判断步骤

步骤一：首先，要辨别出先行词

这二句中先行词是 the woman (妇女) 和 the women (妇女们)，是人，那么它的关系代词就可能是表格中第一列中的任意一个：who, that, whom, whose。

步骤二：然后，要确定关系代词（即先行词）在从句中所担任的成分

在例 和 中均担任主语，所以就从表格中第一行中找出担任主格的关系代词 who, that。

步骤三：最后，要确定关系代词的人称和数

因为 who, that 可以表示单数和复数及各种人称。

例 中先行词 the woman 是单数第三人称，所以从句中的关系代词也代表的是单数第三人称，谓语动词用 is speaking。

例 中 the women 是第三人称复数，who 也代表第三人称复数（见上例 的句子），所以谓语动词用 are speaking。

注意

定语从句的时态不受主句的限制。

The woman **who (that) spoke at the meeting yesterday** is my mother.

昨天在会议上发言的那位妇女是我妈妈。

主句 The woman is my mother.

叙述客观事实用一般现在时。

从句 who (that) spoke at the meeting yesterday

句中有 yesterday (昨天)，表示过去的时间，所以从句用过去时。

3 定语从句的辨认与使用

思考步骤：

1. 找出先行词

a. 确定在从句中关系代词的人称、数和性。

b. 确定定语从句的位置(一般情况下定语从句都紧跟在先行词之后，尤其是限定性定语从句)。

2. 确定关系代词在从句中所担任的成分以确定关系代词的格。

3. 确定从句的时态

根据实际情况确定定语从句的时态（它的时态、语态都不受主句的限制）。

他所要见的人在上海。

先行词是人（the man），单数第三人称

他所要见的人 He wants to see (the man).

关系代词在从句中作宾语，所以要用宾格 whom, that, who 都可以。
(当然在从句中作宾语还可以省略)

时态：根据句子要求用一般现在时。

注意

先行词是位在主句中。

根据 、 、 此句译为：

The man { whom
that
who } he wants to see is in Shanghai.
(可省略)

如果我们把从句的时态改为过去时或别的时态也可以。

The man { whom
that
who } he wanted to see last week is in Shanghai.
(可省略)

他上周想见的那个人现在在上海。

Where is the book { that
which (were) } was on the desk?
(are the books)

the book was on the desk?

the books were

原来放在书桌上的那本书（那些书）在哪儿？

说明

先行词：the book (the books)

关系代词 that, which 代物（书），在从句中作主语，不能省略。

从句用过去时。

Have you found the bike { that
which } you lost?
(可省略)
you lost (the bike)

你找到你遗失的那辆自行车了吗？

同样，此句还可以改为用自行车作为从句中的主语，从句用被动语态。

Have you found the bike { that
which } was lost?

The bike was lost.

(此句中关系代词作主语，所以不能省略)

说明

先行词：the bike

关系代词：自行车是物，它在从句中作宾语，所以用宾格。同时还可以省略。

主句用现在完成时；从句是一般过去时。

Do you know the girl whose mother works here?

her mother works here.

你认识那个她母亲在这儿工作的女孩吗？

说明

先行词：the girl

关系代词：whose，它在从句中担任定语。

时态：主句用一般现在时；从句用一般现在时。

I live in the room whose window faces south.

I live in the room the window of which faces south.

=whose

我住在窗户朝南的那间屋子里。

注意

whose 既可代人，又可代物，（它的先行词可以是人，也可以是人以外的事物）。

说明

先行词：the room.

关系代词：whose 代物，在从句中作定语。

Do you know the boy { whom
who
that my mother is talking to?
(可省略)

你认识那位我妈妈正在与他谈话的那个男孩吗？

此句还可以把介词 to 提前：

Do you know the boy to whom my mother is talking?

注意

此时关系代词只能用宾格 whom，而且也不能省略。

说明

先行词：the boy

关系代词：在句子中作介词宾语，所以要用宾格，又因为它在从句中作宾语，故可以省略。

4 各种关系代词的使用方法

1 关系代词 who (whom) 的用法

1. who 可以代人（即它的先行词必须是人），在从句中可以担任主语，往往也可以代替在从句中担任宾格的 whom，但它的前面不能有介词，如果带介词则必须用宾格的 whom：介词+whom。

This is the **teacher** **who teaches us maths.**

└─ 在从句中作主语

这就是教我们数学的老师。

She is the **girl** **who (whom) I met at the party.**

└─ 在从句中作宾语 (who 可以代替 whom)

她就是我在晚会上遇见的那个女孩。

She is the **girl** **with whom (who) I went there.**

└─ 在从句中作介词 with 的宾语

She is the girl **with whom I went there.**

(因为把介词 with 提到从句的前面了，所以只能够用 whom，而不能用 who 来代替)

她就是和我一起去那儿的女孩。

2. 在本章开始处所列的表格中可以看出 who, that 在许多情况下可以通用，但有时则宜用 who，而不用 that。

a. 先行词是 one, ones, anyone 时宜用 who。

One **who** has nothing to fear for oneself dares to tell the truth.

一个无所畏惧的人敢于说实话。

The ones **who** flatter me don't please me.

那些奉承我的人并不能取悦于我。

Don't tell **anyone** about the news **who** oughtn't to know it.

不能把这个消息告诉任何一个不应该知道它的人。

注意

anyone 只能指人，用 who 较合适，但是先行词本身是 anything 时，则宜用 that 为关系代词，另外这句中先行词 anyone 与定语从句中间有一些别的词则更宜用 who 作为关系代词。

Anyone who fails to finish the task given should be criticized.

任何人不能完成指定的任务，都应受到批评。

b. 先行词为 those 时，宜用 who 为关系代词。

Those **who** were not fit for their work could not see the beautiful clothes made of the magic cloth.

不称职的人都看不到这种奇妙的布所制成的美丽的衣服。

Those **who** want to go to the Great Wall sign up here.

凡是想去长城的人在这里签名。

c. 当先行词有较长的后置定语时。

I met a foreigner **in the street yesterday who** could ask me question in Chinese.

昨天，在街上，我遇到一位能用汉语问我问题的外国人。

d. 一个句子中带有两个宾语从句，其中一个宾语从句的关系代词是 that，另一个宜用 who。

The boy **that** you met last night is the group leader **who** studies very hard.

昨天晚上你遇见的那位男孩是位学习非常努力的组长。

e. 在 there be 开头的句子中

There is an old man **who** wants to see you.

有位老人要见你。

There are many young men **who** are against him.

有许多年轻人反对他。

2 关系代词 whose 的用法

whose 是代词的所有格，它既可以代人也可以代物。

I saw a woman **whose** bag was stolen.

(I saw a woman her bag was stolen.)

我看见了一位皮包被偷了的妇女。

(我看见了一位妇女，她的皮包被偷走了。)

I'll call a person **whose** father knows you.

(I'll call a person his (her) father knows you.)

我要给一个他父亲认识你的人打电话。

比较

I'll call a person who knows you.

我要给一个认识你的人打电话。

Which is the car **whose** owner you know?

(Which is the car its owner you know?)

(Which is the car the owner of the car you know?)

Which is **the car the owner of which** you know?

你认识车主的车是哪一辆？

(whose 可以代物，当代物时，它相当于...of which。)

Please show me the book **whose** cover is red.

(Please show me the book its cover is red.)

Please show me the book **the cover of which** is red

(Please show me the book the cover of the book is red.)

请把封面是红色的那本书拿给我看看。

3 关系代词 that 的用法

1. 首先要特别注意 **that 只能用在限定性定语从句中**，在非限定性定语从句中永远不能选用 that，另外介词后面不能跟 that，而跟 which。

Crusoe's dog, **which** was very old now, became ill and died.

... ()

(非限定性定语从句，只可用 which)

Crusoe's dog, **that** was now very old, became ill and died.

...(×)

(非限定性定语从句不能用 that)。

克鲁索的狗，现在已很老了，病死了。

2. 在限定性定语从句中 which 和 that 在代替物时，一般可以通用。

The money **that (which) is in the wallet** is mine.

放在这个钱包里的钱是我的。

The money **that (which) (省略) my mother gave me yesterday** has been stolen.

昨天我妈妈给我的钱已经被偷走了。

3. 有些情况下，只宜用 that，而不宜用 which

a. 先行词是最高级形容词或者它的前面有最高级形容词时。

This is the **best that** has been used against pollution.

这是用来防止污染的最好的办法。

English is the **most difficult subject that** you will learn during these years.

英语是这几年当中你所学科目中最难的一科。

b. 先行词是序数词，或它前面有一个序数词时。

He is the **last person (that)** I want to see.

他是最不想见的人。

It is the **first American movie of this kind that** I've ever seen.

这是我看到的第一部这类美国影片。

c. 主句已有疑问词 who 或 which 时。

Which is the bike that you lost?

他丢失的是哪辆自行车？

Who is the woman that was praised at the meeting?

在大会上被表扬的那位妇女是谁？ d. 先行词既有人又有物，宜用 that。

Do you know the **things and persons that** they are talking about?

你知道他们正在谈论的人和事情吗？

The **bike and its rider that** had run over and old man were taken to the police station.

撞倒了一位老人的那辆自行车和人 都被送到了派出所。

e. 先行词是 all, much, little, something, everything, anything, nothing, none, the one 等代词时。

You should hand in **all that** you have.

你们应该把你们所有的一切都交上来。

We haven't got **much that** we can offer you.

我们没有许多能向你（你们）提供的东西。

I mean **the one that** you talked about just now.

我指的是你刚刚谈到的那个。

f. 先行词前面 only, any, few, little, no, all, one of, the same, the very 等词修饰时。

The **only thing that** we can do is to give you some money.

我们唯一能够做的就是给你一些钱。

Li Ming is the **only one that** got full marks in our class.

李明是我们班唯一一个得满分的学生。

Li Ming is the **only one that** wants to be a teacher.

李明是唯一一个想当老师的人。

Li Ming is **one of** the students **that** want to be teachers in our class.

李明是我们班想当老师的学生之一。

g. 有两个宾语从句，其中一个关系代词已用 which，另外一个宜用 that。

Edison built up a factory **which** produced things **that** had never been seen before.

爱迪生办了一个工厂，生产过去从未见到过的东西。

注意

that 前不加介词

4 关系代词 which 的用法

1. 在非限定定语从句中，只宜用 which，不能用 that。

Beijing, **which is the capital of China**, is a very beautiful city.

北京是中国的首都，它是一座美丽的城市。

Li Ming is late for school every day, **which** makes his teacher very angry.

李明每天都迟到，这使得他的老师非常生气。

2. 在限定性定语从句中 which 和 that 在代物时常常可以通用，但有时只宜于用 which，不用 that。

a. 关系代词前有介词时

This is the hotel in **which** you will stay.

=That's the hotel (which/that/可省略) you will stay.

这就是你将要在那里住的旅馆。

在这句话中，如果介词 in 放在句子后面，那么关系代词即可用 which，也可用 that，还可以省略。

b. 如有两个定语从句，其中一句的关系词是 that，另一句宜用 which。

Let me show you the novel **that** I borrowed from the library **which** was newly open to us.

让我给你看看我从新开放的图书馆借来的小说。

注意

that 和 which 在定语从句中作关系代词的主要区别

which:

(1) 可用于非限定性定语从句中，代替物或整个主句或主句中的一部分。

(2) 可用于介词之后

介词+which (代物)

that:

不能用于上述二种结构之中。

5 关系代词与介词·关系代词的省略

1 关系代词和介词

1. 介词放在关系代词的前面时，介词宾语只能用 which 代物，和 whom 代人。

无论是代物时 which 作介词宾语，还是代人时 whom 作介词的宾语，如果介词在关系代词前，关系代词一律不能省略。

This is the hero of **whom** we are proud.

这就是我们引为自豪的英雄。

(whom 不能省略, 不能用 who 代替)

I want to find the very pen with **which** I wrote that letter.

我想找到我写那封信的笔。

(which 在介词 with 的后面, 不能省略, 更不能 using that 代替)

注意

that 不能放在介词后面。

who 不能代替 whom 放在介词后面, 也就是说, 介词后面的宾格(指人时)只能用 whom。

2. 介词在末尾时

可用 that/which (代物), that/whom/who (代人) 作介词的宾语, 且这个作介词宾语的关系代词往往省略。

这就是我们引以为荣的英雄。

This is the hero $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{that} \\ \text{who} \\ \text{whom} \end{array} \right.$ we are proud of.
(可省略)

This is the hero of whom we are proud. 比较

我想去找我用来写信的那支笔。

比较

I want to find the pen $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{that} \\ \text{which} \end{array} \right.$ I wrote the letter with.
(可省略)

I want to find the pen with **which** I wrote the letter.

2 关系代词的省略

首先要注意只有在限定性定语从句中才可以省略, 非限定性定语从句中不能省略。

在限定性定语从句中, 下列情况下关系代词可以省略。

1. 当关系代词在从句中担任动词宾语时

The people (who, whom, that) we met at the party were

关系代词在从句中作动词 met 的宾语, 可省略

very friendly to us.

我们在晚会上见到的人对我们非常友好。

2. 关系代词在从句中作介词的宾语, 而介词在句尾时

Here is the man (that, who, whom) you have been looking for.

关系代词: 在从句中做 for 的宾语

你一直在找的那个人来了。

3. 关系代词在从句中作表语时

Shanghai is no longer the city (that, which) it used to be.

关系代词在从句中作表语

(it used to be the city)

上海再也不是过去的上海了。

4. 在 there be 句型中, 和先行词 way 时, 关系代词总是省略

略

I don't like the **way** (that) you talk to somebody else.

先行词

我不喜欢你跟别人谈话的那种方式。

There is an old man (who) wants to meet you. ()

这儿有一位老人要见你。

(即使关系代词在从句中作主语,也可省略。)

注意

有些“介词+动词”组成的短语动词,关系非常紧密,介词不能前置。

I want to take a photo of the girl that/who/whom/省略/my mother takes care of./looks after....()

I want to take a photo of the girl after whom my mother looks....
(×)

我想给我妈妈照顾的那位小姑娘照个像。

(注意:有的介词像 during 不能后置。)

6 非限定性定语从句中的关系代词

在非限定性定语从句中关系代词的使用情形(见下表):

关系代词	代表人			代表物			代表主句或部分主句的内容
	主格	宾格	所有格	主格	宾格	所有格	
who							
whom							
which							
as							
whose							
of which							
that							

比较:在限定性定语从句中关系代词的使用情形(见下表):

关系代词	代表人			代表物		
	主格	宾格	所有格	主格	宾格	所有格
who						
whom						
which						
whose						
as						
that						

He didn't tell me any news, **which** upset me.

他没有告诉我任何消息,这使我很不安。

说明

which 引导的从句,代表前面的整个主句。(不能放在主句之前。)

As everybody knows, Taiwan belongs to China.

众所周知,台湾属于中国。

As is known to us, Taiwan belongs to China.

↑ as 在从句中作主语

众所周知，台湾属于中国。

(关于非限定性定语从句可参阅本章第二部分 P.251 :定语从句的种类)

说明

As 引导的定语从句，代表整个主句，它可以放在主句之前或之后，as 在从句中作宾语。

7 关系副词的定义与用法

关系副词是用来引导定语从句的，它和关系代词一样，具有数种作用：

在定语从句中代替先行词。

在从句中担任成分——状语，亦即在从句中起副词和介词短语作用。

起连接作用，它把两个句子连接成为一个带有定语从句的主从复合句。

关系副词有下列三种：

where：在从句中作地点状语，指代地点。

when：在从句中作时间状语，指代时间。

why：在从句中作原因状语，指代原因。

1 where 的用法

This is the house + I was born in the house.

介词短语

(=I was born there.)

副词

=This is the house where I was born. 这就是我在那儿出生的房子。

先行词 关系副词

(=连词+介词短语/副语，它把两个句子连接成一个复合句)

where 代替先行词 the house 在从句中作地点状语，它代替 there(副词) 或 in the house(介词短语)。同样上述句子也可以用关系代词来连接。

This is the house	{	which	I was born in.
		that	I was born in.
		(可省略)	I was born in.

This is the house in which I was born.

“This is the house + I was born in the house.” 共可用五个不同的句子来表达！

The hotel where we stayed wasn't clean.

我们住过的那个旅馆不干净。

同样它也可以用关系代词来表示：

The hotel { $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{that} \\ \text{which} \\ \text{(可省略)} \end{array} \right\}$ we stayed at wasn't clean.
 $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{that} \\ \text{which} \\ \text{(可省略)} \end{array} \right\}$ at which we stayed wasn't clean.

2 when 的用法

He came at a time when we needed help.

先行词 \leftarrow 在从句中代替 at a time, 作时间状语

他在我们需要人帮忙的时候来到了。

(when=at which 表示 at a time)

此句同样也可以用关系代词表示

He came at a time { $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{which} \\ \text{that} \\ \text{(可省略)} \end{array} \right\}$ we needed help at.

He came at a time at which we needed help.

We'll never forget the day when we join the Party.

我们永远也忘不了我们入党和那一天。

October 1, 1949 was the day that (when) the People's Republic of China was founded.

一九四九年十月一日是中华人民共和国成立的日子。

注意

如果按语法来讲, 上述两个句子只能用 when 来连接, 但在口语中表示时间时, 常用 that 代替 when, 而且还可以省略。

3 why 的用法

The reason why I'm calling you is to invite you to a party.

先行词 \leftarrow 关系代词, 代替 reason 作从句的原因状语

我给你打电话的原因就是想邀请你参加一个晚会。

此句可以写成:

The reason { $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{why} \\ \text{that} \\ \text{(可省略)} \end{array} \right\}$ I'm calling you is to invite you to a party.

带 reason 的定语从句与表语从句的区别:

The reason why (that/省略) ... (定语从句)

The reason is that... (表语从句)

(不能用 why 否则就重复了)

注意

一般来讲在定语从句中只要先行词是 the reason, 它的关系副词就是 why, 但是在口语中, 也和 when 一样, 关系副词 why 也常被 that 代替, 也可以省略。

The reason is that I want to invite you to a party

原因就是我想邀请你参加一个晚会。

4 关系代词和关系副词在定语从句中的区别

这一问题，很使得一些人迷惑不解，实际上你只要弄清楚，它在定语从句中担任什么成分，就会很容易地做出判断。**只要在定语从句中担任状语的，就是关系副词** when, where, why (当然上面提到的口语用法除外，在书面语言中，语法规则要求还是较严格的)，而不取决于先行词是什么。

This is the **house where** I worked 2 years ago.
这就是我二年前在那儿工作过的房子。

This is the **house that/which/省略** I visited.
这就是我参观过的房子。

这二句中先行词都是 the house，但关系词不一样。

例 中用 where (关系副词)，因为它在从句中作状语，表示 there 或 in the house。

例 中用 that/which/省略，因为它在从句中作宾语。

I'll never forget the **day when** I joined the army.
我永远也忘不了我参军的那一天。

I'll never forget the **day that/which/省略** we spent together.
我永远忘不了我们一起度过的那一天。

这二句中的先行词都是 the day，但关系词不一样。

例 中 when 在从句中作状语，等于 I joined the army on the day.
when 表示 on the day 介词短语

例 中 that/which 在从句中作 spent 的宾语 (spend 是个及物动词)。

8 as 引导的定语从句

as 作为关系代词和关系副词可以引导定语从句。

1 such...as... “像……一样的”，“像……之类”

the same...as... “和……同样的”

在这两个句型中，as 是关系代词，其中 such 和 same 作定语，修饰主句里的某个名词 (或代词)，这个名词是 as 引导的定语从句的先行词，as 在从句中可担任主语、宾语和表语。

We have found such materials **as are used in their factory**.
(as 作主语)

我们找到了 (像) 他们厂里用的那种材料。

Such people **as you describe** are short nowadays. (as 在从句中作宾语)

你描绘的这种人在现在已很少了。

He is not the same man **as he was**. (as 在从句中作表语)

This is the same thing **as we are in need of**. (as 在从句中作宾语)

这东西和我们所需要的东西是一样的。

2 ...such as...

such 为代词，意思为“这样的人或物”，as 在从句中担任成分，修饰先行词 such。

This book is not such **as I expect**. (as 在从句中作宾语)
这不是一本我所希望的书。

He told me of his experience such **as I had never had before**.
(as 在从句中作宾语)

他给我讲了他的经验，我从来没有那种经验。

I have not many, but I will send you such **as I have**.
我有的不多，但我愿把我所有的都送给你。

3 the same...as...

同一个.....

the same...that...

as 和 that 都引导的是定语从句，所表达的意思相近或相同，但从句中省去谓语时必须用 as 代替 that。

He works in the same shop **as /that I do**.

他和我在同一个车间干活儿。

She is the same age **as you**.

She is the same age that you.... (×)

她和你同年。

He uses the same books **as you**.

=He used the same book **that/as you do**.

他和你用的书是一样的。

注意

所指的是不同一个，必须另加词句。

{ This is the **same pen as I lost**.
This is the **same pen that I lost**.
This is the **pen that I lost**.

这支钢笔就是我丢掉的那一支。（指同一支笔）

This is the same **kind (type, sort) of pen as I lost**.

这支钢笔跟我丢掉的一模一样。（但并不是原来的那一支。）

She wears the same clothes **as she did last Sunday**.

她穿的就是她上周日穿的那件衣服。（同一件）

She wears the same kind of clothes **as her sister does**.

她穿的衣服和她姐姐（妹妹）穿的完全一样。（但不是同一件，是同一类型）

4 ... ,as ... 有些

有些 as 引导的定语从句已成为一些固定用法，如 as we know（正如我们所知道的）。

as 代表整个句子的内容，引导非限定性定语从句，它的先行词可以是名词，也可以是不定式短语或整个句子，as 在从句中担任成分：主语、宾语和表语，相当于 which 引导的非限定性定语从句，有时两者可互换。

The teacher is from Beijing, **as/which they know from his accent**.

他们从老师的口语中就知道他是北京人。

As everybody can see, great changes have taken place in China.

(正如大家所能看到的)大家都看得出,中国已发生了巨大的变化。

注意

as 引导的定语从句位置灵活,可放在句首、句尾(可放在主句之前或之后)。which 引导的非限定性定语从句只能放在主句之后。

9 定语从句中需注意事项

1 one of+复数名词+关系代词+复数形动词

the(only)one of+复数名词+关系代词+单数形动词

The Great Wall is one of the world-famous buildings that draw lots of visitors

长城是吸引大批游客的世界伟大建筑之一。

Titanic is one of the most wonderful movies that have been produced in Hollywood.

《泰坦尼克号》是好莱坞生产的最精彩的电影之一。

但如果前面加上 the 或 the only 之类的限定词,则定语从句中的谓语动词就要用单数。

Titanic is the (only)one of the most wonderful movies that has been produced in Hollywood.

《泰坦尼克号》是好莱坞所生产的唯一一部精彩的电影。

He is the (only)one of the students who knows Russian in our school.

他是我校唯一懂俄语的学生。

2 what 不能用于定语从句中

(×)Tell me anything what you know.

()Tell me anything that/省略 you know.

()Tell me what you know.

(what 引导宾语从句=anything that)

告诉我你所知道的一切。

()I want to give you all (that)I have.

(×)I want to give you all what I have. (what 不能引导定语从句)

()I want to give you what I have.

(what 引导宾语从句=all that/anything that)

我想把我所有的一切都给你。

10 定语从句和同位语从句的区别

1 根据 that 在从句中是否担任成分来判定

that 在定语从句中必须担任成分,而在同位语从句中不担任成分。

The news that the leader will come here is not true.

(同位语从句,that 在从句中不担任成分)

领导将要来这儿的消息不是真的。

The news (that)you told me last week is not true.

(定语从句, that 在从句中担任 told 的宾语)

你上周告诉我的消息不是真的。

2 根据意思来判断

在关系代词前加 is, 如果句子成立就是同位语从句, 否则就不是。

The news **that the leader will come here** is not true.

The news is that the leader will come here.

(句子成立, 所以是同位语从句)

消息就是(等于)领导要来这儿。

The news **that you told me last week** is not true.

The news is that you told me last week.

(因为 the news 不能等于 you told me last week, 所以句子不成立, 不可能是同位语从句)

你上周告诉我的消息不是真的。

3 根据 that 前的名词判断

同位语 that 前的名词必须是一个表示事实的抽象名词, 如 fact, news, information, order, belief, reply, answer, saying 等等, 而定语从句前的先行词没有这个限制, 但这一点不是决定因素, 主要还要依前面所述的两大点来判断。

Practice 实力测验

一. 把下列句子变为定语从句

1. I know the boy. He can speak English well.
2. Mary bought a little bird. It was very pretty.
3. The season is summer. It comes after spring.
4. I have a friend. His father is a teacher.
5. That building is my uncle's house. Its wall is white.
6. He is a singer. I like his songs very much.
7. The man was American. I spoke to him yesterday.
8. I can't find the house. My friend lives in it.
9. I know the boy. You are looking for him.
10. This is the town. He was born in the town.
11. We arrived here on the day. Do you remember it?

二. 把下列简单句变为带有定语从句的复合句

1. The boys playing tennis are my friends.
2. He had a letter written in French.
3. She is the girl called Mary.
4. I know the boy running in the park.

三. 选择填空

1. Look at that lady ____ name is Pochi.
A. who B. whose C. whom D. that
2. He is a teacher ____ I like very much.
A. who B. whose C. 不填 D. which
3. Those picture ____ were drawn by Tom are nice.

- A . who B . whose C . whom D . which
- 4 . Those ____ will go to the park stay here.
A . who B . that C . whom D . whose
- 5 . That was all the money ____ I had.
A . which B . that C . whose D . whom
- 6 . The girl ____ could sing well went to Europe.
A . who B . whose C . whom D . which
- 7 . Tom is the first boy ____ left the room.
A . who B . that C . whom D . whose
- 8 . This is the biggest ship ____ I've ever seen.
A . who B . whom C . that D . whose
- 9 . You can read any book ____ I have.
A . who B . whom C . that D . whose
- 10 . This is all ____ she said about it.
A . who B . whom C . what D . that
- 11 . Look at the boy and his dog ____ are coming this way.
A . who B . which C . what D . whom
- 12 . I like swimming, ____ is a very good sport.
A . which B . that C . as D . who
- 13 . Swimming is a very good sport, ____ everybody knows.
A . which B . that C . as D . who
- 14 . They selected Tom, ____ they liked, as captain.
A . which B . that C . who D . whom
- 15 . That was the year ____ I went to America.
A . when B . where C . that D . which
- 16 . We came to the town, ____ we stayed for 2 days.
A . when B . where C . that D . which
- 17 . This is the reason ____ I came here.
A . when B . that C . why D . which

四 . 各种代词选择填空 (高考题)

1 . 关系代词

1 . In the dark street , there wasn't a single person ____ she could turn for help . (NMET ' 92)

- A . to whom B . who
C . from whom D . that

2 . She heard a terrible noise , ____ brought her heart into her mouth . (MET ' 91)

- A . it B . which
C . this D . that

3 . I shall never forget those years ____ I lived in the country with the farmers , ____ has a great effect on my life . (上海 ' 94)

- A . that ; which B . when ; which
C . which ; that D . when ; who

4 . China has hundreds of islands , (A) the largest

Do you remember the day which/that/省略 we arrived here on?

二 .

1. The boys who are playing tennis are my friends.
or: The boys that are playing tennis are my friends.
2. He had a letter that/which was written in French.
3. She is the girl that/who is called Mary.
or: She is the girl whose name is Mary.
4. I know the boy who/that is running in the park.

三 .

1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. B
6. A 7. B 8. C 9. C 10. D
11. C 12. A 13. C 14. D
15. A 16. B 17. C

四 .

1. A 2. B 3. B
 4. C that which 5. B
 6. C 7. C 8. C
 9. C 10. D 11. C
 12. A 13. C 14. A
 15. B 16. D 17. D
 18. A 19. A 20. A
21. B: whomever whoever 22. D: any 前加 that of

第 12 章 状语从句

第 12 章 状语从句

- 1. 表示时间的状语从句.....283
- 2. 表示地点的状语从句.....287
- 3. 表示原因的状语从句.....288
- 4. 表示条件的状语从句.....289
- 5. 表示目的、结果的状语从句.....290
- 6. 表示让步的状语从句.....293
- 7. 表示比较的状语从句.....295 在句中作状

语用的从句叫做状语从句。它可修饰谓语、非谓语动词、定语、状语或是整个句子。状语从句一般由连词（从属连词）引导。也可以由词组引起，有时不需要连词而直接和主句连接起来。

I'll go **wherever the Party leads us.**

我要永远跟党走。（wherever 引导状语从句，状语从句修饰谓语动词 go）

As soon as he gets there, he'll call me.

只要他一到那儿，就会给我打电话。

（词组 as soon as 引导状语从句，修饰主句。）

Say what you may, I won't change my mind. ()

不管你怎么说，我是不会改变主意的。

（没有用连词，直接和主句连接起来了。）

状语从句可以表示：地点、时间、原因、条件、目的、结果、让步、行为方式、比较等。

1 表示时间的状语从句

时间状语从句，由以下连词引导：when, as, while, as soon as, no sooner...than...,

hardly ... when ... ,scarcely ... when ... ,since, before, after, till(until)

在时间状语从句中，要注意时态一致。一般情况下主句是将来时的时侯，从句要用一般现在时。

1 when 的用法

1. 当.....的时候

When I was young, I went to town myself.

（当）我还年轻时，我自己独自去城镇里。

When he receives the letter, he'll tell us.

（当）他接到信后，他会告诉我们的。

2. when = and then; at that moment (正在那个时候)

此时 when 前面一般要有逗号，when 不能放在句首。

主句动词一般表达“正在，即将”。when 和 suddenly 经常连用。

We were watching TV, **when suddenly the light went out**

我们大家正在看电视，忽然灯灭了。

He was about to leave, **when the telephone rang**
他正要离开，忽然电话铃响了。

必背！

表时间的状语从句，还可以用复合关系词引导。

whenever = no matter when

Whenever(=No matter when)I visited him, he was not at home.
我无论什么时候拜访他，他都不在家。

2 while 的用法

1. 当.....时

表示主句、从句的动作同时发生，while 后引导的状语从句的动词必须是延续动词不能是点动词，因为它表示较长的时间。

The hero looked about himself, **while the enemy was studying (studied) the map.**

敌人研究（仔细查看）地图时，英雄四处看看。

He visited a lot of places **while he was travelling.**

while（当.....时）和介词 during 意思相近。

=He visited a lot of places **during his travelling.**

他在旅行途中参观了许多地方。

2. while 有时含有对比的意思。

I was doing my homework **while my brother was playing games.**
我做功课，而我弟弟却在玩游戏。

They are classmates. He is a doctor, **while she is still studying in a high school.**

他们俩个是同班同学。可是他已经是个博士了，而她仍在高中读书。

3 as 的用法

1. 在.....的同时；一边.....一边.....

He smiled **as he left me.**

他微笑着离开了我。

As we walked, we talked.

我们边走边谈。

2. 有时用 just as 表示两件事在时间上很接近。

Just as I was leaving, the phone rang again.

我正要离开时，电话铃又响了。

比较

as, when, while 的区别

as、while 和 when 都表示主、从句的动作或状态同时发生，三者差异如下：

while 用于时间较长时

强调两个动作同时进行，并表示对比时

as 用于发生时间较短时

表示一边.....一边.....的意思时

when 另外还可以表示从句动词的动作在主句动词的动作“之前”或“之后”发生。

所以有时三个词可以互换，有时不可以。

It was raining hard **when (as)** I got there.

我到达那里时，正在下大雨。

(动作同时发生，when 可换为 as，但不能换为 while，因为 get 是点动词)

When I had read the article, he called me.

我看完这篇文章后，他给我打了电话。

(从句动作发生在主句之前，注意时态的表达，只能用 when)

When I got to the cinema, the film had begun.

(当)我到了电影院时，电影已经开演了。

(从句的动作发生在主句之后，只能用 when，并要注意时态。)

She thought I was talking about her daughter, while, in fact, **I was talking about my daughter.**

她以为我在谈论她女儿，然而实际上我在谈论我的女儿。

(while 表转折、对比、when, as 都不能替代它)

Mother was worried because little Alice was ill, especially **as(when/while)** Father was away in France.

妈妈担心，因为小艾丽思病了，特别是当她父亲离家在法国的时候。

(此时 as, when, while 可通用)

4 since 的用法

1. 当“自……以来，到现在”解

表示自过去的一个起点时间到目前(说话时间)为止的一段持续时间，主句一般用现在完成时，从句用一般过去时。

I have worked here **since I graduated from the university thirty years ago.**

我自三十年前大学毕业以来，就在这儿工作。

(since 还可以作介词，本句 since 从句还可以用短语：since thirty years ago (自从三十年前以来)表示。)

He has been ill **since he went to England last month.**

自从他上个月到英国后，他就病了。

2. 常用句型 **It + is ...since...**

It is many years **since World War Two.**

or: It is many years **since World War Two was over.**

自从二次大战(结束)以来，已经很多年了。

How long is it **since you were a P.L.A. man?**

=How long have you been a P.L.A. man?

你参军多久了？

注意 因为“since + 从句或名词”表示的是一段期间，所以现在完成时的动词要用延续动词。

5 after, before 的用法

1. after: 在……之后; before: 在……之前

Do it now **before you forget.**

趁你还没忘，现在就去做。 **注意翻译**

After he had left school, he joined the army.

(毕业之后)离开学校之后，他参加了军。

2. 常用句型 It is (was) (not) +时间+before+从句

用了多长时间.....

It was not long before I forgot it all

没过多久我就把它全忘了。

It was long (one year) before she came

她过了很久(过了一年)才回来。

6 as soon as:—.....就.....

和它表达意思一样的还有

no sooner...than... ; hardly...when... ; scarcely...when... (请参阅本书倒装句部分) 及单词 directly, immediately, the moment 等

As soon as/Immediately/Directly he came home, I told him about that.

他一回家我就告诉他那件事。

He'll go with you as soon as he finishes his work.

他一完成他的工作,他就和你一起去。

7 till (until) 直到.....才

(参见初级版介词部分 P.196 ,not...until。参阅本书第 8 章倒装部分)

We walked and walked until it was dark.

我们一直走,走到黑为止。

2 表示地点的状语从句

地点状语由连词 where 和复合关系词 wherever (=no matter where) 引导。

1 where 的用法

Go where you want.

去你想去的地方。

Where there is a will, there is a way.

有志者事竟成。

You'd better make a mark where you have any questions.

=Where you have any questions you'd better make a mark.

哪儿有问题,你就在哪儿做个记号。

注意

注意这不是定语从句

2 wherever :不论何处 (=no matter where)

多用于句首

Wherever there is smoke, there is fire.

(无火不生烟)无风不起浪。(不论在什么地方,只要有烟就有火。)

3 表示原因的状语从句

原因状语从句由连词 : because, since, as, 引导也可由 now, that 等词引导。

1 because, since, as, for (并列连词) 比较

在语气上, because 最重, 其次是 since, as. for 一般并不表示原因, 表示理由、进一步说明, 这是一个并列连词, 但易与上述三个连词混淆, 故放在这里加以比较。

这四个词在汉语中都可译为“因为”。

1. because 因为.....

a. 语气最重, 回答 why (为什么) 时只能用它。

Why are you absent? Because I am ill.

你为什么缺席? 因为我病了。

(它多放在主句之后)

注意

since 和 as 表示原因时, 通常放在句首。

b. because 不能和 so 连用, 不能像汉语似的写成“因为.....所以”

He is disappointed because he failed again. ()

So he is disappointed because he failed again. (x)

因为他又失败了, 所以他感到失望。

2. since 既然.....

表示对方已经知道的事实或理由。

Since everybody is here, Let's begin.

既然大家都来了, 那咱们就开始吧。

Since no one is against it, we'll pass it.

既然没人反对, 那就通过了。

3. as 由于.....

表示较为明显的原因, 语气较弱, 比较口语化。

As you request it, I will come.

=I'll come because you request it.

(因为) 由于你的要求, 所以我要来。 (语气缓和)

As she is not well, I'll go myself.

=I'll go myself because she is not well.

由于 (因为) 她身体不好, 我将自己去。

4. for 因为.....

一般只表示理由。

The day breaks because the sun is rising.

(必然的因果关系)

天亮了, 因为太阳出来了。。

The day breaks ,for the birds are singing.

(不是直接的原因, 而是推断的结果。)

天亮了, 因为鸟在叫。

(因为鸟叫了, 可能还会是别的原因: 人来了, 快地震了.....)

比较

because 表示的是直接的理由。 for 表示的是推断的理由。

注意

for 表原因时不能放在句首且口语中很少用 for 表原因。

2 now that: 因为

Now that I have visited some places, I believe China is a great country.

看了许多地方，我相信中国是个伟大的国家。

4 表示条件的状语从句

条件状语从句由连词：if ,unless(=if not)(on condition)引导。

1 if:如果

由 if 引导的条件句分为真实条件句和虚拟条件句，（虚拟条件句请参阅本书虚拟语气部分）。

常用句型：祈使句+and/or...

If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we'll go there.

从句（一般现在时） 主句（将来时）

如果明天不下雨，我们就去那儿。

注意

条件句与时间状语一样，当主句是将来时的时候，从句要用一般现在时。

If you use your head, you'll find a way.

=Use your head ,and you'll find a way.

他要动动脑子的话，他就会想出办法来。

If you don't hurry up, you'll miss the bus.

=Hurry up, or you'll miss the bus.

快点儿，否则你就会赶不上（错过）这班车了。

2 unless (=if...not)除非

不能用于虚拟语气。

I won't attend the meeting unless I am invited.

(=I won't attend the meeting if I am not invited.)

我将不参加会议，除非我被邀请。

（如果我不被邀请，我将不参加会议。）

Unless bad weather stops me, I jog every day.

除非坏天气作梗，否则我每天都慢跑。

5 表示目的、结果的状语从句

目的状语从句由连词 that, so that, so...that, in order that 引导。

结果状语从句由连词 (so)that, so...that, such...that, so much/many...that 引导。

1 so that; so...that

可引导目的状语从句和结果状语从句，请注意其区别。

当它们引导目的状语从句时，从句的谓语里常有 can, could, may, might, will, would 等词。

而当引导结果状语从句时则没有上述这些词，而且从内容上看主句和它们引起的结果状语从句有因果关系，主句为因，从句为果。

比较

I'll speak slowly **so that you can understand me.** (目的)

我将慢慢讲以使你听懂我的话。

He spoke slowly **so that I understood him.** (结果)

他说得慢，结果(所以)我听懂了他的话。

比较

He always studies **so hard that he may make great progress.**

(目的状语从句)

他总是那么努力地学习，这样，他才会取得很大的进步。

He always studied **so hard that he made great progress.**

他总是那么努力地学习，结果他取得了很大的进步。

比较

I opened the window **so that fresh air might come in.** (目的)

我把窗户打开以使新鲜空气可以进来。

I opened the window **so that fresh air came in.** (结果)

我把窗户打开这样新鲜空气就进来了。

2 in order that:为了.....

in order that 和 so that; so...that 表示目的时一样，从句的谓语动词里常有 can, could, may might, will, would 等词，它和不定式 in order to; so as to; 和 to...表示目的时意思是一样的，只不过不定式表示目的时，句子是简单句。

He raised his hand high **in order that/so that he might be seen.**

=He raised his hand **so high that he might be seen.**

还可以用以下的简单句(不定式表达)：

=He raised his hand **so as to be seen.**

=**In order to be seen** he raised his hand high.

=He raised his hand high **in order to be seen.**

=**To be seen** he raised his hand high.

=He raised his hand high **to be seen.**

他把手举高以便于别人能看见他。

Please speak up **in order that/so that we may hear you clearly.**

请你声音大一点，以便我们都能听清楚。

注意

so as to 只能放在后面，不能放在句首。

3 so...that/such...that 如此.....以至

so + 形容词(副词) + that }
such + 名词 + that } 两者皆表结果

so 为副词，后面可接形容词或副词；such 为形容词，后面只能接名词。

The weather is **so nice that all of us want to go to the park**
状语从句

天气那么好，我们大家都想去公园玩。

It's $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{such}(\bigcirc) \\ \text{so}(\times) \end{array} \right\}$ nice weather that all of us want to go to the park.
↑ 不可数名词

(such 和 so 后面所真正修饰的词是名词 weather, 而非形容词 nice, 所以不可用 so)

多么好的天气啊, 我们大家都想去公园玩。

He is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{so honest(a boy)} \\ \text{such an honest boy} \end{array} \right\}$ that the teachers like him very much.
↑ 单数可数名词

(so 修饰 honest; such, an 和 honest 都是修饰 boy 的形容词)
 他是如此的诚实, 以至老师们都非常喜欢他。

They are $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{such}(\bigcirc) \\ \text{so}(\times) \end{array} \right\}$ beautiful pictures that I want to buy all of them.
↑ 复数可数名词

(such 和 so 后面真正修饰的词是 pictures, 所以不可用 so)
 它们是那么漂亮的画, 以至于我想把它们全买了。

注意

句型: such + 形容词 + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{不可数名词} \\ \text{复数可数名词} \end{array} \right\}$ + that

不可以用 so...that 代替

句型: such + a(an)+形容词+单数可数名词+that

=so + 形容词+a(an)+单数可数名词+that

Mike is such an honest worker that we all believe him.

=Mike is so honest a worker that we all believe him.

迈克是如此诚实的一位工人, 以至于大家都相信他。

1. 当可数名词前有 many, few; 不可数名词前有 much, little 修饰时

句型: so many(few, much, little)+名词+that

因为此时 so (副词) 修饰 many, few, much, little, 而不修饰名词。

I have had so many falls that I am black and blue all over.

我摔了许多跤, 以至于我浑身青一块, 紫一块。

Mr. Green had so little education that he was unable to get a job.

格林先生受的教育那么少, 以至于他不能得到一份工作。

There are so few books that I can't give you any.

我简直没有什么书, 连一本也不能给你。

He had so much work to do that he had to decide not to see the film that night.

他有那么多工作要做, 只有决定那天晚上不去看电影。

2. so...that: 表示结果, 也可以用简单句(不定式)来表示

He was so kind that he helped me.

=He was so kind as to help me.

他人很好, 所以帮助我。

6 表示让步的状语从句

让步状语从句用连词 though, although, even if, even though, however, whatever, whoever, whichever 等引导。

1 though, although: 虽然

though, although 当“虽然”讲,但是它们不能和 but 连用。

Although he was tired, he went on working.

=He was tired but he went on working.

=He went on working though he was tired.

(×) Although he was tired but he went on working.

虽然他累了,可是他还是在继续干活。

I was late for the last train although(though)I hurried.

虽然我拼命赶路,还是没赶上最后一班火车。

倒装句(详见倒装句部分)

Though he is young, he knows a lot.

=Young as he is, he knows a lot.

虽然他年轻,可是他懂得(不少)很多。

2 even if =even though “即使……,也”

Even if (Even though) your teacher said so, you need not believe him.

即使你的老师这么说,你也不必相信。

Even though(Even if) it is raining, we'll go.

即使下雨了,我们也要去。

Even if I were busy, I would go. (虚拟语气)

即使我忙,我也要去。(事实上我并不忙)

Even if I am busy, I will go. (陈述语气)

虽然我忙,我也要去。(我现在的的确很忙)

注意

even if 和 even though 所引导的状语从句中的动词用陈述语气或虚拟语气,其意义有所不同。

3 复合关系词引导的状语从句

You may go wherever you like.

=You may go to any place where you like. (定语从句)

你愿意去哪儿就可以去哪儿。

Whenever he comes, he asks the same question.

=At any time when he comes he asks the same question.

=No matter when he comes, he asks the same question.

无论他什么时候来,他总是问同样的问题。

I will buy the book, however expensive it is.

=I will buy the book, no matter how expensive it is.

无论这本书有多贵,我也要去买它。

7 表示比较的状语从句

比较状语从句主要运用于形容词、副词的原级、比较级及最高级的句子之中。

原级：as...as; not so(as)...as

比较级：more...than

最高级：the most...in(of)...

这几种句型请参阅初级版中形容词及副词章节。对初级版没涉及的几种用法，这里加以解释：

1 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{more...than 比(更), (表示“比较”)} \\ \text{the more...of... 比较.....的(表示“选择”)} \end{array} \right.$

This film is **more interesting than** that one.

这部电影比那部有意思。

This film is the **more interesting** of the two films.

这部电影是两个电影中比较有趣的。

This film is **the most interesting of** the three.

这部电影是三部中最有趣的。

说明

例 两部电影的比较。

例 从两部电影中选择了这一部。

例 三个以上比较或从中选择则用最高级。

2 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{no more than 只不过(嫌少的含义)} \\ \text{not more than 不多于(客观的说明)} \end{array} \right.$

I have **no more than** ten yuan.

我才有十元钱。(太少了)

I have **not more than** ten yuan.

我的钱不超过十元。(客观地说出事实,没有感情色彩。)

They have learned **no more than** two thousand words.

他们才学了(只不过才学了)2000个单词。(强调他们学得少)

We have learned **not more than three** thousand words.

我们学了3000个单词。(客观的说明)

The film is **no more interesting than** that one.

这部电影和那部电影一样没意思(没趣)。

(那部电影没趣,这部电影也不比它好多少)(都不好)

The whale is **no more a fish than** a horse is.

鲸不是鱼,正如同马不是鱼一样。

Practice 实力测验

一. 选择填空

1. The bell is ring ___ there is a fire.(85)

A. even B. that C. if D. although

2. ___, he doesn't study well.(85)

A. As he is clever

- B . He is as clever
 C . Clever as he is
 D . As clever he is
- 3 . Jane wore a raincoat ____ it was raining. (86)
 A . so B . but C . however D . because
- 4 . When you read the book, you'd better make a mark ____ you have any questions. (86)
 A . at which
 B . at where
 C . the place where
 D . where
- 5 . John gives me more help than _____. (86)
 A . Tom is B . Tom has
 C . Tom does D . Tom gives
- 6 . I'll go with you as soon as I ____ my work. (86)
 A . will finish B . shall finish
 C . finish D . finished
- 7 . —Listen to me, please.
 —No, no matter ____ you say, I won't give up. (86)
 A . how B . which
 C . what D . whatever
- 8 . Nobody believe him ____ what he said. (87)
 A . even though B . in spite
 C . no matter D . contrary
- 9 . Do you think Sam'll call his old teacher as soon as he ____ in town? (87)
 A . will Be arrived B . is arrived
 C . arrives D . will arrive
- 10 . It was not long ____ I forgot it all. (86)
 A . then B . when
 C . after D . before
- 11 . ____ far away you are, you are always in our thoughts. (88)
 A . Even though B . Not with standing
 C . No matter how D . In spite of
- 12 . The horse is getting old and can not run ____ it did. (88)
 A . as faster as B . so fast than
 C . so faster as D . as fast as
- 13 . She told us ____ story that we all forgot about the time. (88)
 A . such an interesting
 B . such interesting a
 C . so an interesting
 D . a so interesting
- 14 . The roof fell ____ hie had time to dash into the room to save his baby. (88)

— .

1 . C

2 . C

3 . D

4 . D

5 . C

6 . C

7 . C

8 . C

9 . C

10 . D

11 . C

12 . D

13 . A

14 . C

15 . B

16 . B

17 . C

18 . B

19 . D

20 . C

21 . A

22 . D

23 . A

24 . D

25 . C

第 13 章 主谓一致

第 13 章 主谓一致

1. 并列结构作主语时与谓语的一致关系.....301
2. 单一主语的情况.....303
3. 其它情况.....305

1 并列结构作主语时与谓语的一致关系

1 由 and 连接两个名词或代词作主语时

A and B (A 和 B) 可分为下列四种情况

1. A, B 表不同的人、物或观念时

两个词所表示的是不同的人, 不同的事物或不同的概念时, 谓语动词要用复数形式。

Li Ming and Zhang Hua are good students.

李明和张华是好学生。

Both the teachers and the students are here.

老师和学生们都在这里。

注意

both A and B 作主语时, 谓语动词用复数。

2. A, B 表同一个人、物或观念时

两个词所表示的是同一个人、同一事物或同一概念时, 谓语动词要用单数形式。

A journalist and author lives in the courtyard.

一个新闻记者兼作家的人住在这个院子里。

The turner and fitter is under twenty-five.

这个车工兼钳工的工人不到二十五岁。

当作句子的主语的两个名词具有对立的意思时, 主语前用一个冠词不会使人发生误解。

A boy and a girl are playing together.

一个男孩和一个女孩在一起玩。

注意

同一个人只能用一个冠词, 如果是不同的两个人就要用两个冠词。

3. A, B 之前有 each, every, many a, no..... 等修饰语

当 and 连接几个单数主语, 主语由 each, every, no, many a 等词修饰时, 谓语动词要用单数。

Each man and each woman is invited.

每一个男人和每一个妇女都受到了邀请。

Every man and woman is invited.

所有的男人和女人都被邀请。

No boy and no girl is there now.

现在那儿没有任何男孩和女孩。

Many a boy and many a girl has been invited.

许多男孩和女孩都被邀请了。

many a...也跟单数谓语动词]Mary a student likes pop songs.
许多学生喜欢流行歌曲。

4. A, B 为两个不可分的东西时, 谓语动词用单数

A watch and chain was found on the desk. (视为一件东西)
一只挂表在桌上找到了。

Bread and butter is nutritious. (视为一种食物)
奶油面包有营养。

2 由 or; not only...but(also)...; either...or; neither...
nor 连接主语时

A or B (A或B)	}
Either A or B (不是A就是B)	
Neither A nor B (A和B都不是)	
Not only A but also B (不仅A.....而且B.....)	

谓语的人称和数与靠近的主语一致(在叙述句与 B 一致, 在疑问句与 A 一致)

Either you or I am mad.

不是你, 就是我疯了。

Neither you nor he is right.

你和他都不对。

口语中 neither... nor... 连结句子, 动词也可用复数。所以 也可说 Neither you nor he are right.

Not only the teacher but also his family were friendly to me.

不但是这位老师, 连他的家人都待我很好。

3 当主语后跟有 with, along with, together with, besides, except, like, including, as well as, rather than 等词时

A +	}	with except	B + 谓语动词
		along with line	
		together with including	
		besides as well as	
		but rather than	

谓语动词不受词组的影响, 仅和第一个主语(A)保持一致

All but one were here just now. (87)

所有的除了一个之外刚才都在这儿。

A library with five thousand books is offered to the nation as a gift. (90)

一个有 5000 册书的图书馆作为礼物送给了这个国家。

She as well as the other teachers is going to another park.
她和其他老师打算去另一个公园。

The father, rather than the brothers, is responsible.
父亲和哥哥们是负责的。

A peasant together with some workers is about to help us.

一个农民和一些工人即将来帮助我们。

2 单一主语的情况

1 以复数形式结尾的名词作主语时和谓语的一致关系

1. 有些表示学科名称的词如 physics (物理), maths (数学), economics (经济); 以及 news (新闻) means (方法), works (工厂) 等一般被以为是形复意单的词, 它们作主语时谓语动词一般用单数形式。

Physics **is** very important.

物理非常重要。

Every means **has** been tried.

每一种方法都试过了。

This works **was built** in 1982.

这座工厂是 1982 年建的。

注意

上述名词如表示的是复数概念时, 谓语动词用复数。

All possible means **have been** tried.

一切可能的方法都试过了。

2. 表示双部分工具的名称、衣服名称等作主语时, 谓语用复数形式

如: trousers/pants(裤子), shoes(鞋), glasses(眼镜), scissors(剪子), goods(货物), clothes(衣服)。

如果这些词由 pair(suit, piece, series, kind)+of 修饰时, 谓语动词用单数。

My trousers **are** white and his clothes are black.

我的裤子是白色的, 他全身衣服都是黑色的。

All the goods **are** good.

所有的货物都不错。

A pair of shoes **is** lying there.

那摆着一双鞋。

但是在 these/those pair(series, kind, type)of+复数名词之后, 谓语动词用复数形式。

These kind of glasses **are** popular.

这种样式的眼镜很流行(受欢迎)。

2 动名词、不定式、从句作主语时, 谓语动词一般要用单数

To see **is** to believe.

百闻不如一见。

Reading **is** a good way.

读书是个好方法。

When he will come **is** not known.

他何时来还不知道。

注意

当 what 从句是具有复数意义的并列结构时, 谓语动词也可用复数结

构。

What I say and think **is/are** about his future.

我所说的和所想的都是关于他的前途的（问题）。

3 集体名词作主语时

1. mankind/humanity/man（人类）作主语时，谓语动词一般用单数形式。

Man **is** mortal.

人都是会死的。

2. 由 people（人们）, police（警察）, cattle（牛）, youth（年轻人）等集体名词作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。

The police **like** to help people.

警察愿意帮助人们。

The youth of our country **are** happier than the other people.

我们国家的年轻人比别的人幸福。

3. family, crowd, class, public, enemy 等集体名词作主语时

a. 如它们所表示的人或事物当整体看，谓语动词用单数形式。

Our family **is** very happy.

我们的家庭是个幸福的家庭。

b. 当它们表示的人或事物当作若干个体来看，谓语动词则用复数形式。

When I came into the room, his family(the members of his family)**were watching** TV.

我进到房间时，他们家（中的人）正在看电视。

c. a family/group/class 作主语时，谓语动词用单数

families, groups/classes 作主语时，谓语动词用复数

A group **is coming** to us.

一队人正朝我们走来。

3 其它情况

1 主语为表示距离、时间、长度、价值、金额、重量、等复数名词时，谓语动词用单数形式。

Three times three **makes** nine.

三乘三等于九。

Ten thousand pounds **is** a large sum.

一万英镑是一大笔钱。

算术中的动词，近年来单复数都通用。

Two hours **is** enough.

二小时足够了。

2 one

}	one	anyone	}	+ of + 复数名词
	every one	either		
	each one	neither		
	each			

谓语动词一般用单数形式 (但 either, neither 在口语中可接复数谓语动词)

of 之后的复数名词不是主语而是介词 of 的宾语, of 前面的 one, every one...等才是主语。

Neither of them **is** right.

=Neither is right.

两个中没有一个是对的。

Either of them **is** right.

=Either is right.

两个之中有一个是对的。

Each of them (Each boy) **has** a book.

=They each **have** a book.

他们每个人 (每一个男孩) 有一本书。(强调个体)

3 none of...

none of+不可数名词

谓语动词用单数形式

none of+可数名词

为语动词可用单复数两种形式。

None of that money in the desk **is** his.

└─ 不可数名词

None of the boys here **likes** dancing.

└─ 可数名词

none of...谓语动词用单数形式比较规范,用复数形式比较口语化。

=None of the boys here **like** dancing.

这儿的男孩子们都不喜欢跳舞。

4 分数或百分数+of+词组

分数或百分数+of+词组作主语时,谓语动词的数取决于 of 后的名词或代词的数。

分数或百分数+of+词组 (不可数名词或是单数) 谓语动词用单数形式。

分数或百分数+of+词组 (复数名词) 谓语动词用复数形式。

Three-fourths of the surface of the earth **is** sea. (88)

地球表面四分之三是海洋。

Two-thirds of the people present **are** against the plan.

出席人数的三分之二反对这项计划。

Tens of tons of waste **goes** into the air with the smoke everyday.

每天成百吨的废气随着烟雾混到空气中去。

5 more than...

more than one (单数名词)+单数动词

more than two (复数名词)+复数动词

More than one boy **has** been there.
不止一个男孩已经去过那儿了。

More than two boys have been there.
已经有两个以上的男孩去过那儿了。

6 number of...

a (great)number of+复数名词→用复数动词

the number of+ $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text{可数名词} \\ \text{不可数名词} \end{array}\right.$ →用单数动词

A number of the students are for the plan.

一些学生(同意)赞成这一计划。

A number of students **were** absent yesterday.

许多学生昨天缺席。

The number of students in the computer class **is** limited to ten.

计算机课上学生的数目限制为十人。

7 ten+形容词

the+形容词,表示一类人 谓语动词用复数

the+形容词,表示一类物 谓语动词用单数

The rich (=Rich people)**are** for the decision but the poor(=poor people)**are** against it.

富人们支持这项决议而穷人们反对它。

The beauty **is** hers.

这些漂亮的东西是她的。

The learned(=The learned people)**are** apt to despise the ignorant.()

有学识的人往往轻视无知识的人。

8 every, any, some, no 构成的复合词

everyone, everybody, everything

anyone, anybody, anything

someone, somebody, something

no one, nobody, nothing

} 这些复合词做主语时, 谓语动词用单数形式

Everyone has his own hobby.

每个人都有他自己的嗜好。

Listen, someone is singing.

听,有人在唱歌。

Anyone but you is welcome.

除了你任何人都受欢迎。

Practice 实力测验

一、注意下列句子中谓语动词的数，并把它们译成汉语

1. Many boys are fond of football.
2. Many a man has tried it before.
3. A good (great) many people were killed during the earthquake.
4. Bread and milk is wholesome (有益于健康) food.
5. All that can be done has been done.
6. All of us are interested in English.
7. Three plus three is(are)six.
8. I, but you, was in the wrong. Not I but he has been invited.
9. Some(Most)of the apples are good.
10. Some(Most)of the sugar is damp.
11. Half of his time was spent on the book.
12. Half of my friends are college students.
13. The rest of the money belongs to you.
14. Three of us will go; the rest are to stay here.
15. A lot of work is to be done.
16. A lot of teachers were praised.

解答

1. 许多男孩子喜欢足球。
2. 以前许多男性已经试过它了。
3. 有许多人在这场地震中丧命。
4. 奶油面包是有益健康的食品。
5. 所有能做的都已经做了。
6. 我们所有人对英文有兴趣。
7. 三加三等于六。
8. 我错，不是你错，不仅我而且他已被邀请了。
9. 有一些（大部分）苹果是好的。
10. 一部分（大部分）的糖是潮湿的。
11. 他的时间有一半花在书本上。
12. 我的朋友中有一半的人是大学生。
13. 其余的钱属于你。
14. 我们之中有三个人将会去；其余的人呆在这儿。
15. 许多工作即将被做。
16. 许多老师被赞扬。

附录：英语语法词汇释义

Active voice 主动语态 ⇒ 语态 (Voice)

Adjective 形容词

字面的意思是表示“形状”的词。

(“形”或“容”也是“形状”的意思。)从语法上讲，是修饰名词或代词，且能成为表语的词。

Mary is an American girl.

形容词 名词

She is very tall.

代词 形容词

(玛丽是美国小姐，她的个子很高。)

Adverb 副词

附加于(修饰)动词、形容词、其他副词等的词。

A very tall man came upstairs.

副词 形容词 动词 副词

(一个很高的人走上楼来。)

Antecedent 先行词

在关系词前面的词。

This is the hat that I bought yesterday.

先行词 关系代词

that 代表它前面的 the hat, 同时又连接了 This is the hat. 和 I bought yesterday. 两部分。

(这是我昨天买的那顶帽子)

Antedant circumstances 附带状况

伴随行为，指同时进行两种行为时，附属(=附带)于主要行为的行

He stood with his hands in his pockets.

/He stood, hands in pockets.

(他把双手放在衣袋中站着。)

主要行为是 He stood, 与此同时产生的伴随行为是 with his hands in his pockets/hands in pockets (双手放在衣袋中)。

Article 冠词

加在名词前的词。在英语中有 a, an, the 三个词。

又因 a 和 an 泛指一般的普通名词，称之为不定冠词；the 则指一特定的名词，称之为定冠词。

Attributive use 限定用法

形容词的用法之一，即放在名词或代词之前，直接修饰名词或代词。相对将形容词置于谓语部分的叙述用法 (Predicative use) 而言。例如，“a good dictionary” 是限定用法，而 “The dictionary is good.” 是叙述用法。关于关系词的用法，有时也指限定用法。

Auxiliary verb 助动词

从意思上是指辅助实义动词，以表示否定、疑问、时态、语态、语气等的单词。

Case 格

名词以其在句中与其它词语的关系，可分属于主格、宾格、所有格三种格。

Clause 从句

从字面解释为“竹子节”。在语法中指（长）句子中的一节，即具有主语部分和谓语部分，其本身能构成句子的词组。同一句子中有二个（以上）从句时，如互相处于相等地位称为对等从句，如为主、从关系，则称为主句和从（属）句。对等从句由对等连词（and, but, or, for 等）连接，从（属）句按照功能可分为名词从句、形容词从句、副词从句。

总之，从句依其在句中与其字词的关系，可分成从（属）句、主句和对等从句。

		种类	说明
从句		主句	句子中的主体，可脱离其它从句而独立成为一个完整句子。
	从属句	名词从句 形容词从句 副词从句	由从属连词引导，附属在主句上，
		对等从句	不能脱离主句而单独成为一个句子。 由对等连词连接若干个从句而成的合句中的各从句称为对等从句，各 对等从句均可脱离其它从句而单独成为一个完整的句子。

Complement 表语

补充（动词）的词。在英文语法中分为与主语关系相等的主语补足语和与宾语关系相等的宾语补足语。⇒不完全动词（Incomplete verb）

Conjunction 连词

用来连接单词、词组、从句、句子的词。

You will find her in her study or in the garden.

（你将在书房里或花园里找到她。）

or 或 in her study 和 in the garden 两个词组。

Countable 可数

可数的意思，相对不可数而言。能够使用复数形名词称为可数名词，不能使用复数形名词称为不可数名词。

Declarative sentence 陈述句

平实地（即如实地）叙述事实的句子，包括肯定句和否定句。⇒句子（Sentence）

Determiner 限定词

是用于名词开头，限定该名词的数、量、顺序、性质等的词。在英语中为冠词、指示形容词、数量词、序数词、所有格，例如 certain, some,

such 等。

Exclamatory sentence 感叹句

表示惊讶、高兴、悲伤、赞美等强烈感情的句子，典型的为有“what+名词”或者“how+形容词、副词”开始，以感叹号（！）结束的句子。
⇒ 句子（Sentence）

Future form 将来时

表示尚未到来事物的形式。严格来讲，英语中没有动词、助动词形式的“将来时”，要表示将来的意思用 will 或 be going to 等。

Generic 总称的

指全部总称，对事物或事件一般性描述的用法。

A friend in need is a friend indeed.

（关键时刻的朋友是真正的朋友）a friend 和 is 分别是“所谓朋友”，“总是那样”之意，是总称性用法。

Gerund 动名词

就形式而言，动名词和现在分词一样都是由“动词原形+ing”而成，所不同的是，现在分词是具有动词性质的形容词，动名词则是具有动词性质的名词。

Grammar 语法

造句时的方法（规则）。

Imperative sentence 祈使句

表示命令、请求、劝告或禁止的句子。在英语中一般省略主语，用动词的原形开始。⇒ 句子（Sentence）

Incomplete verb 不完全动词

如无表语，谓语部分便不完整的动词，相对不需要表语的完全动词而言。

Summer has come.

（夏天到了）

come 是不需要补语的完全动词

His fears have come true.

（他的担心变成了事实。）

come 是以 true 为表语的不完全动词。

Indicative mood 陈述语气

讲话内容是按事实说明，（=叙述）其时的动词、助动词形式，相对于虚拟语气、命令语气而言，现代英语的动词、助动词几乎所有情况下都采用陈述语气的形式。

Infinitive（动词）不定式

字面上解释为主语不固定的动词形式的意思。即不管内容上的主语是什么，都不变化的动词形式，即“to+动词原形”，其中 to 没有任何含义，只是作为不定式的符号而已。

例如，come 的不定式不管内容上的主语是 I 还是 he，都一定是 for me to come/for him to come，不能成为（×）for him to comes。

Interjection 感叹词

被加入到句子中间的词。如 oh, good ...等，用以表示欢喜、悲哀、愤怒、憎恨、恐怖、惊讶等强烈感情。

Oh! What shall I do?

(呀!我干什么好呢?)

Ah! I told you so!

(呀!我早就告诉你了!)

Interrogative sentence 疑问句

表示疑问(或是提问)的句子。一般以疑问词或助动词开始,以疑问部符号(?)结束。⇒句子(Sentence)

Intransitive verb 不及物动词

自己本身构成谓语部分的动词,即不需要宾语的动词。又因其有无表语而分为完全不及物动词(亦即没有表语的不及物动词)和不完全不及物动词(亦即有表语的不及物动词)⇒及物动词(Transitive verb)

Main clause 主句

含有从(属)句的句子里除了此一从(属)句之外,必须另有一个句子,这个句子即称为主句,主句可以撇开从(属)句而独立成为一个完整的句子。⇒从句(Clause)

Manner 惯用法

事物或行动的样子、状态。例如句中有数个副词存在时,表示“状态”的副词一般放在最前面。

She sang perfectly in the town hall yesterday. (状态+场所+时间)

(她昨天在大礼堂的演唱很完美。)

Modal auxiliary 情态动词

表示讲话人心情(=心态)的助动词。在现代英语中,是指be, have, do,以外的助动词,即can, may, must, will, shall等。⇒语气(Mood)

Modification 修饰

“修”与“饰”均为“装饰”的意思。从语法上是指限定其它词(组)的意思,其本身不参与句子结构的词(组)。修饰名词和代词的“形容词”,以及修饰动词、形容词和副词的“副词”都称为修饰语。

Mood 语气

字面解释为“规则”的意思。在语法中是指与表达讲话人心情状态(情态)的动词、助动词形式有关的规则。在英语中分为陈述语气、虚拟语气、命令语气。要注意的是,在现代英语中仅就形式而言,按规则区分动词、助动词的方式几乎已经废除。⇒情态动词(Modal auxiliary)

I am not a bird. (陈述语气)

(我不是一只鸟。)

If I were a bird, I could fly. (虚拟语气)

(如果我是一只鸟,我就会飞翔。)

Non-restrictive use 非限定性用法

⇒限定用法(Restrictive use)

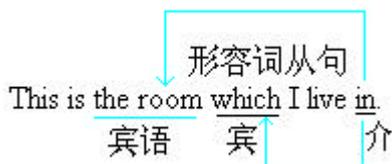
Noun 名词

从字面解释是表示物品名称的词。在语法中是指能构成主语、宾语等的词。

Object 宾语

表示动词所做动作,作用波及对象的语词,或受介词、形容词支配

的语词。



(这就是我住的房间。)

which I live in 为修饰名词 room 的形容词从句；which 为关系代词，做介词 in 的宾语。

Part of speech 词类

字面上的意思是品评词。即按照语法功能进行单词分类。(注意，不是按照意思分类的。)传统上分为以下八类：名词、代词、形容词、动词、副词、连词、介词、感叹词。(按照这种分类，冠词包括在形容词中，助动词包括在动词中。)

Participle 分词

同是具有动词性质和形容词性质的词。在英语中有现在分词(-ing，一般表示主动的意思)和过去分词(-ed/-en，一般表示被动的意思)二种。

Passive voice 被动语态 ⇒ 语态 (Voice)

Past form 过去式

是表示过去动作的动词、助动词形式。动词时，一般在原形后加-ed。

Perfect form 完成时

原为表示动作、状态结束的语法形式，在英语中为“have+过去分词”的形式。英语的完成时未必只表示完了(...做完)的意思，还表示同现在时间有关系，表示仍在继续。

Phrase 词组

是语言中的“组”，是一个不含有主语和谓语的词群。从语法上讲，是指由二个以上单词构成，在功能上相当于一个单词的词组。例如名词词组、形容词词组等。

Predicate (part) 谓语

对主语部分(主语)进行叙述的部分。包含有与主语相呼应的动词，多带有宾语和表语。

Predicative use 叙述用法 ⇒ 限定用法 (Attributive use)

Preposition 介词

置于名词或名词代用语(如代词、动名词等)之前，表示该名词或名词代用语和它的字之间的关系。“介词+名词或名词代用语”构成形容词句或副词句。

My father started for Beijing this morning.

介词

(我爸爸今天早上到北京去了。)

介词 for 说明了动词 start 和名词 Beijing 的方向关系。

Progressive form 进行时

原为表达行为、动作正在进行中的形式。在英语中采用“be+现在分词”的形式，表示“活动”。(同时暗示早晚会结束)。状态动词等与“活动”不相容，故没有进行时。

Pronoun 代词

代替名词使用的词。在英语中有 this, that, I, you, he, she, it, one, such 等。

Reflexive pronoun 反身代词

在主语与宾语相同时，表示宾语再次回到主语的代词。“The dog washed itself.” itself 与主语是同一物。反身代词在现代英语中采用 -self/selves 的形式。

Relative 关系词

联系先行词和对其进行修饰的句子之间关系的词，有关系代词和关系副词两种。⇒ 限定用法 (Restrictive use)

Restrictive use 限定用法

是关系词用法之一，是修饰先行词，把先行词限定于某一个特殊形态的用法。相对于对所有先行词类进行说明的非限定性用法。

He has two sons who became teachers.

(限定用法)

(他有二个儿子当了教师——也许他还有其他的儿子)

He has two sons, who became teachers.

(是非限定性用法)

(他有二个儿子，他们成了教师——一共有二个儿子)。

非限定性用法的关系词前一般加有逗号(,)。

Sentence 句子

一个句子就是具有完整意义的一句话，而一句意义完整的话，从结构上分析，一般必须有主部和对其进行描述的谓语部分构成的句组。前者指出了所说的主体是“什么事”或“什么人”；后者是叙述主语“怎么样”。通常可分为陈述句、感叹句、疑问句、祈使句。

句子的主要成分除了主语和动词外，尚有宾语、表语、修饰语、兹将各成分列别如下：

句 子 的 成 分	主语部分 (Subject)	主语 (Subject word)
		修饰语 (Modifier)
	谓语部分 (Predicate)	动词 (Verb)
		宾语 (Object)
		表语 (Complement)
		修饰语 (Modifier)

Subject 主部

成为句主题的部分，一般包括主语(名词、代词)和主语所带有的附加字。若主语不带附加字时，主部和主语相同。例如“Birds can fly. (鸟会飞)”句中的 Birds 既是主部也是主语。

Subject(word) 主语

成为主要语句核心的词，亦即我们所谈论的人或事物，一般为名词或代词。⇒ 主部 (Subject)

Subjunctive mood 虚拟语气

表示说话人的讲话内容不是作为事实，而是作为假设提出的。现代英语中的虚拟语气的动词在原则上是：假想现在的事情，动词用过去时；

而助动词一律用过去时。直译 subjunctive 是“假设的”、“虚拟的”的意思。